

# Indispensable Reference of International Students IR

To Fundamental Grammar Review

**Awni S. Etaywe** 

Indispensable for Home, Office and Class

For students of all levels

2012

The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan The Deposit Number at The National Library (904/3/2010)

**Etaywe Awni S.** 

IRIS- Indispensable Reference of International Students 'to Fundamental Grammar'

Awni S. Etaywe-Irbid

**Descriptors: English Language/ Language Grammar** 

Prepared by the National Library, Jordan

#### **All Rights Reserved**

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the author.

**Contacts to place orders:** 

<u>awnietaywe@yahoo.com</u> (00962)0777189916

#### **ACKNOLEDGEMENTS**

I would like to express my great appreciation to Dr. Owayed Rata'an (holder of PhD in TEFL, a person of myriad skills, awarded Sheikh Rashid Bin Hamdan AlMaktoum Award for Academic Performance 2003) for his encouragement, continuing support and keen perceptions.

A special thank you is due to Sue Magee (English Trainer at the British Council- Jordan) for her assistance. She has been exceptionally helpful. I am also indebted to Mr. Adnann AlEtaiwy (Instructor, Advisor and Translator at Dhofar University- Sultanate of Oman) for his constructive suggestions and comments.

Last but not least, I thank my students from Jordan who taught me as much as I taught them. They have been proactive participants in their classrooms. Their questions and suggestions have been acting as a trigger that generates brilliant ideas and even a guidance to the required final structure of the material of this book. To them I extend my respect and gratitude.

To my chidren...
To my students...

To my children who have awakened feelings in me that my heart should never harden, and my temper should not tire.

To my students who taught me as much as I taught them. To them I say, always look for knowledge; yes, it has bitter roots but sweet fruits.

# **Contents**

1.	<u>Units</u> The English Alphabet	<u>Pages</u> 9-12
2.	Word classes/ Parts of speech	13-14
3.	English sentence - The main parts of English sentence - The normal sentence pattern in English - Types of English sentence	15-22
4.	An Introduction to Verbs - Auxiliary verbs - Modal verbs - Linking verbs - Contracted forms of pronouns with auxiliary verbs	23-26
5.	Tenses	27-37
6.	Sit/ set, lie/ lay, rise/ raise; and participle verbs	38-40
7.	Non-progressive verbs	41-42
8.	Causative verbs (make, have, get)	43-45
9.	Gerund and to-infinitive  - The uses of verb-ing form  - Verbs followed by to- infinitive  - Verbs followed by gerund  - Adjectives followed by to- infinitive  - Used to  - Hear+ object+ sing/ singing	46-51
Ρŀ	ROGRESS EXERCISES	52-55

	Negation (cannot, inseparable, hardly did he)  - Main negative patterns  - Negative prefixes  - Hardly, rarely, seldom, etc.  - Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs with 'not'  - Imperative and negative imperative	56-62
PR	OGRESS EXERCISES	63-65
11.	Derivation and order of nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs - Word affixes - General guideline of using nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs - Parallel structure	66-74
12.	Subject- verb agreement	75-79
13.	Pronouns - Personal pronouns - Possessive pronouns - Reflexive pronouns - There+ be - Indefinite pronouns	80-84
14.	Nouns - Types of nouns - Countable nouns and mass nouns - Singular and plural nouns - Possessive nouns	85-93

15.	Premodifiers	94-103
	-Quantifiers	
	Using 'few, a few, little, a little'	
	Using 'too, enough'	
	-Demonstrative pronouns	
	-Articles	
	Definite article	
	Indefinite articles	
16.	Modal verbs	104-114
	- Modals uses	
	- Degrees of certainty	
	- Past forms of modals	
	- Probability	
	- Would rather/ prefer	
17.	Phrasal verbs	115-118
	- Separable phrasal verbs	
	- Non-separable phrasal verbs	
18.	Adjective	119-132
	- Order of adjectives	
	- Participial adjectives (-ing and -ed adjectives)	
	- Compound adjectives	
	- Comparative and superlative	
	- Steady and unsteady degree (equal and unequal degree)	
	- Much more comfortable	
	- Better and better; more and more difficult	
	- Comparison of nouns	
	- Double comparatives	
	- Adjectives with linking verbs	
19.	An Introduction to Adverbs and Adverbial Clauses	133-137

20. Types of conditional clauses	138-146
- 'If' and 'unless'	
- 'Wish'	
- 'Hope'	
- As if/ as though	
21. Conjunctions (A):	147-151
- Bothand	
- So, such	
- Not onlybut also, as well as	
- Because, because of, since, now that, as, due to	
- But, although, even though, though, in spite of, despite	
22. Conjunctions (B):	152-158
- And, andtoo, but, whereas, while, bothand, and not either	
- After, before, when, while, as, since, until, as soon as, the first	
time, whenever	
- To, in order to, so that, for	
- Expressing results	
- Not onlybut also, eitheror, neithernor	
23. Interrogatives: Tag Questions, Embedded Questions, Yes/ No questions, Wh-questions/ Information questions	159-168
24. Answers; Affirmative/ Negative Agreement	169-171
PROGRESS EXERCISES	172-175
25. Passive voice	176-183
- Changing a sentence from active into passive	
- Have/ get something done	
26. Direct and indirect speech	184-190
- Changing the direct speech into indirect speech	
~ ~ .	

<ul> <li>27. Relative clauses</li> <li>Using (who, which, and that) as subject pronouns</li> <li>Using (who, which, and that) as object pronouns</li> <li>Whose, where, when</li> <li>Restrictive and non-restrictive relative clause</li> </ul>	191-194
38. Prepositions - Prepositions of place (at, in, on) - Prepositions of time (at, in, on) - Other prepositions - Prepositions+ noun - Verb+ prepositions - Adjective+ prepositions	195-203
29. Emphasis and Hedging	204-206
30. Punctuation Marks & Capitalization	207-211
31. Redundancy	212-213
32. Guide for finding writing errors	214-217
33. Problem words	218-228
PROGRESS TESTS	229-257
Appendices - Appendix (1): Irregular verbs - Appendix (2): Regular and Irregular verbs - Appendix (3): British/ American equivalents - Appendix (4): Numbers - Appendix (5): Nationalities	258-270
- Answer Keys of The Exercises and The Progress Tests	271-301

# 1. How English Alphabet Sounds

"A <u>bus</u> going from Amman to <u>Petra</u> suddenly stoppe<u>d</u>. The passengers were shocked when they heard the bus driver's <u>voice</u> "We've got a puncture". Accordingly, <u>three</u> men got <u>up</u> and went for help. <u>They</u> tried their best but they finally <u>gave</u> up. And everyone <u>took</u> a different bus to their destination. When they arrive<u>d</u> in Petra, two of them <u>found</u> out that their bags were left in their seats in the first bus..."

The following are the symbols which are generally used to show how consonants sound in context:

<u>p</u> ut; Petra	/b/	<u>b</u> est; <u>b</u> us
<u>v</u> an	/t/	<u>t</u> ell
<u>th</u> ree	/d/	<u>d</u> ay; trie <u>d</u>
<u>th</u> is	/k/	<u>c</u> at/ <u>k</u> ilo
<u>s</u> ell; seat <u>s</u>	/g/	good
<u>z</u> oo; bag <u>s</u>	/t <b>ʃ</b> /	cheese, culture
<u>sh</u> ip	/d3/	just
mea <u>su</u> re	/n/	<u>n</u> ext
<u>h</u> ouse	/ŋ/	so <u>ng</u>
<u>M</u> ust	/1 /	<u>l</u> ove
<u>R</u> est	/ <b>j</b> /	<u>y</u> ou
<u>W</u> ill	<b>/f</b> /	<u>f</u> an
	yan three this sell; seats zoo; bags ship measure house Must Rest	van       /t/         three       /d/         this       /k/         sell; seats       /g/         zoo; bags       /t ʃ/         ship       /d3/         measure       /n/         house       /ŋ/         Must       /l /         Rest       /j/

The following are another group of symbols used to show how vowels are pronounced:

•			
/æ/	c <u>a</u> t	/e/	b <u>e</u> t; m <u>e</u> n
/ə/	an <u>o</u> ther	/ <b>I</b> /	s <u>i</u> t
/a/	Top; got	/\/	c <u>u</u> t; <u>u</u> p
/ਪ/	B <u>oo</u> k; t <u>oo</u> k	/i/	seem; three
<b>/</b> U/	m <u>oo</u> n	/eɪ/	g <u>a</u> ve; s <u>ay</u>
/aɪ/	D <u>ie</u> ; m <u>y</u>	/JI/	b <u>oy</u>
/၁/	m <u>o</u> rning; l <u>aw</u>	/əʊ/	<u>o</u> pen; n <u>o</u>
/aʊ/	f <u>ou</u> nd;n <u>ow</u>		

# The following are some basic rules for pronunciation (c, g, qu, kn, wr, tion, sion, final s/ es/ d/ ed)

The following are some rules that help you read letters and words correctly: (Remember that every rule has an exception)

- 'C' is pronounced /s/ when it is followed by (e, i, or y), as in; voice, city, circle, ceiling, and Bicycle. When followed by any other letters, it is pronounced /k/, as in: puncture, can, car, company, close, and case.
- 'G' is pronounced /d3/ when it is followed by (e, i, or y), as in general, giant, gym, and geography. When followed by any other letters, it is pronounced /g/, as in: gate, good and glance.
- 'Qu' is pronounced /k/ when it comes at the middle or at the end of the word, as in; antique, and etiquette. And it is pronounced as /kw/ when it comes at the beginning of the word, as in; question, quiz, and quiet.
- 'Kn' in word like 'kn ock' is pronounced /n/.
- 'Wr' is pronounced /r/, as in 'write'.
- 'Ck' is pronounced /k/, as in (knock, lock and check).
- 'tian' and 'tion' sound /Jan/, as in (destination, Egyptian and nation).
- 'sion' is pronounced /3ən/, as in (television and vision).
- The final 'e' of a word is not pronounced, as in (have, late, love, make, give, same).
- The final s/ es:

- Final 's' is pronounced /s/ after a voiceless sound, as in (seats, hats, books, asks.
- o Final 's' is pronounced /z/ after a voiced sound, as in (bags, homes, miles, days, agrees).
- o Final 'es' or 's' is pronounced /əz/ after (sh, ch, s, z, g), as in (wishes, dishes, catches, matches, rises, courses, sizes, prizes, edges, judges).

#### • The final d/ed:

- o Final 'ed' is pronounced /t/ after voiceless sounds, as in (stop**ped**, loo**ked**, hel**ped**, and pu**shed**)
- o Final 'ed' is pronounced  $/\mathbf{d}/$  after voiced sounds, such as: arrived, filled and tried.
- o Final 'ed' is pronounced /əd/ after d and t, for instance, needed, waited, loaded, and counted.

# Exercise (1)

# Select the appropriate answer:

1. The underlined letter in the word 'books' is pronounced:
a. /s / b. /z/ c. /əz/
2. The underlined letter in the word 'days' is pronounced:
a. /s / b. /z/ c. /əz/
3. The underlined 'Kn' in the word ' <u>kn</u> ow' is pronounced:
a. /n / b. /k/ c. /kn/
4. The underlined letter in the word ' <u>c</u> ity' is pronounced:
a. /s/ b. /k/ c. /z/
5. The underlined letter in the word ' <u>c</u> ompany' is pronounced:
a. /s/ b. /k/ c. /z/
6. The underlined letter in the word 'bag' is pronounced:
a. /k/ b. /g/ c. /j/
7. The underlined letters in the word 'helped' is pronounced:
a. /t/ b. /d/ c. /əd/

# Exercise (2)

# According to the sound of the underlined letter(s), write the words in the correct column:

playe <u>d</u>	ch <u>ea</u> p	cons <u>u</u> mption	paint <b>ed</b>	sacke <u>d</u>
entangle <u>d</u>	<u>v</u> an	laughe <u>d</u>	affect <u>ed</u>	<b>sh</b> arp
repeat	<u>th</u> ese	rec <u>ei</u> ve	ded <u>u</u> ction	<u><b>th</b></u> in

/t/	/d/	/ð/	/i/	/0/	/\/	/ <b>v</b> /	/ʃ/	/əd/

# 2. Word Classes (Parts of Speech)

"One spring's evening, a *rich* man *in the* garden of *his* palace was reading 'The Daily Mirror'. *Before* he left his couch, he noticed a *stranger* looking *anxiously* for something in the vicinity of the palace. "What's wrong, man?", the rich man asked. "I lost my wallet", the Stanger said sorrowfully..."

**2.1** There are eight word classes in English language. This includes the following:

Word Classes	Examples
Noun	stranger, Robert, prevention, college, table, Jordan
Pronoun	she, they, it, me, which, who, this
Adjective	rich, terrible, fantastic, handsome, boring
Adverb	anxiously, politely, yesterday, always, very, where, very
Verb	asked, see, helped, taught, married, is, could, seem
Preposition	on, at, in, etc.
Conjunction	before, then, after, then, so, if, but
Determiner	a, the, few, all

- 1. Noun is a word that can act as a subject, an object of a verb, an object of a preposition, or a subjective complement, for example:
  - a. <u>Prevention</u> is better than cure. subject
  - b. Don't *show* <u>laziness</u> to your boss.

object

c. She has something of **courage**.

Object

- d. This is the **courage**.
  - Subj comp.
- 2. Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, as in: Melissa sold the cassette to **her** brother.

- 3. A verb is a word which describes an action or a state, as in:
  - He **plays** well. They **are** quick.
- 4. An adjective is a word that qualifies a noun or pronoun, as in:
  - a.Rami is a **quiet** man.
  - b. She is beautiful.
- 5. An adverb is used to modify a verb, an adjective and another adverb. Examples include:
  - a. I spoke **politely**.
  - b. I'm **very** well.
  - c. The programme was **very** boring.
- 6. A preposition is a word which shows a relationship between objects or actions, as in:
  - a. The book is **on** the table.
  - b. He looked at me.
  - c. He arrived **in** time.
- 7. A conjunction is a word that connects words, clauses or sentences, as in:
  - a. Aidah is clever **but** she always fails.
  - a. Aidah and Maya are close friends.
- 8. A determiner is used to modify a noun (the quantity, the definition, possession, etc...), as in:
  - a. **The** lady I saw was kind.
  - b. **Some** sons are unkind to their parents.

# 3. English Sentence

"Although Sami was polite, hardworking and helpful at work, his colleagues brought out the worst in him. Rashid, one of his friends, said that Sami threw away the money he had for fun. One night he couldn't even afford a taxi ride home. In one night, his life had gone from wealth to total poverty. He sold his house and he lost his job..."

## 3.1 English Sentence

The sentence is at the top of the hierarchy of grammar. All the other elements, such as words, phrases and clauses go to make up sentences. It is a unit of grammar that can stand alone and make sense and obeys grammatical rules. For example:

#### 'The old man is exhausted'

Subject Predicate

'The old man is exhausted' is a sentence that is made up of a subject 'The old man' and a predicate 'is exhausted'.

**Note**: Predicate means all the parts of a clause or a sentence that aren't contained in the subject.

**Note**: In English statements, the subject precedes the verb.

## 3.2 The Main Parts of English Sentence

Any English sentence consists of different parts. The following are the main parts from which we usually form sentences:

ı J				
The main parts	Examples			
- verb phrase	- can run, is playing, has got			
- noun phrase	- the bed, a man, this book, a glass of milk			
- adjective phrase	- absolutely <b>horrible</b>			
- adverb phrase	- upstairs, outside			
-prepositional phrase	- in the city, on Saturday			

- A verb phrase is a group of verb forms that has the same function as a single verb, as in 'We have been running', 'have been running' is a verb phrase.
- A noun phrase is a group of words containing a noun as its main word and functioning like a noun in a sentence. It may contain determiners (the, a, this, etc.), adjectives, adverbs, and/or nouns. It doesn't begin with a preposition. In the sentence 'She is a complete fool', 'a complete fool' is a noun phrase. Similarly in 'I lost an invaluable ring'.
- An adjectival phrase describes a noun/ pronoun, as in 'He is absolutely idle'.
- An adverb(ial) phrase usually describes a verb, as in: 'We meet the boss *regularly*.' (*'regularly'* describes *'meet'*)
- A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition+object, as in "I was **in the library**", "in the library" is a prepositional phrase.

# 3.3 The normal sentence pattern in English is as the following:

Subject	Verb	Object	Modifier
George	ate	a sandwich	last night

**The subject** is the person or thing that performs the action of the sentence. Every sentence in English language must have a subject. The subject may be a single noun (as in sentence 1), a noun phrase (as in sentence 2) or a pronoun (as in sentence 3).

- 1. **Tea** is my favourite drink.
- 2. **The Housing Bank** was closed yesterday.
- 3. **She** works very hard.

**The verb** shows the action of the sentence. Every sentence must have a verb. That verb may be a single word (as in sentence 1) or a verb phrase (as in sentence 2 and 3).

- 1. John **loves** Haya.
- 2. John is eating Kabab.
- 3. John has been watching a football match.

**The object** completes the verb as a complement. It is usually a noun, a noun phrase or a pronoun. Not every sentence requires an object. It depends on whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. This complement doesn't begin with a preposition, and it answers the question what? or whom?

- 1. Mr. Dove ate **a cake** last night.
- 2. Jim was driving a brand new car.
- 3. Mary called **him**.

A modifier tells the time (as in sentence1), place (as in sentence 2 and 3), or manner of the action (sentence 4 and 5). It answers the question when? where? or how? It is usually a prepositional phrase (a group of words that begins with a preposition and ends with a noun) or adverbial phrase as in:

- 1. I saw my fiancée at eight o'clock.
- 2. Mary met Sally at the roundabout.
- 3. Samar was swimming in the pool.
- 4. She drove her car **very fast**.
- 5. Ali works **carefully**.

Note: **Intransitive verbs** are verbs that do not take direct objects, as in:

(go, agree, and walk):

- I go to school every Monday. Things *changed*.
- I agree with you.
- He walked.

**Transitive verbs** are verbs that take direct objects. In the sentence:

"Sam <u>bought</u> <u>a book</u>".

verb object

'a book' is a direct object and so, 'bought' is a transitive verb.

Note: Many verbs can be either transitive or intransitive, according to the context. Thus 'change' is intransitive in 'Things changed' but transitive in 'Sam changed his plan'.

- 1. Things changed.
- 2. Sam changed his clothes.

A noun clause is a subordinate that performs a function in a sentence similar to a noun or noun phrase. It can act as a subject, an object or a complement of a main verb. It can be preceded by any of these connectives (that, what, why, when, where, which, who, how many, how old, how often, how long, and how much).

#### **Examples include:**

- 1. We asked **why he objected**. (why he objected) is a noun clause used as an object.
- 2. **When he leaves** is his own business. (when he leaves) is a noun clause used as a subject.
- 3. That is **what I want**. (what I want) is a complement.

#### 3.4 Types of English Sentence

#### a. Simple Sentence

The simple sentence cannot be broken down into other clauses. It generally contains a finite verb, as in:

He couldn't even afford a taxi ride home. The man stole the red car. I saw a wonderful island. She studies so hard.

Note: **A clause** is a group of words containing a finite verb, which can form a part of a compound or complex sentence.

Note: **A finite verb** is a verb that has a tense and agrees with a subject in number and persons for example 'look' is finite in 'The

man looks ill'. The non-finite verb includes: present participle (considering that), gerund (writing short stories...), past participle (I have adopted...) and present infinitive verb (to refuse orders...).

# The following are the main sentence patterns of simple sentences:

The Patterns	<u>Examples</u>
S+ V	- The sun rose.
	- He has been sleeping.
	- He is swimming.
S+ TV+ DO	- Hassan writes novels.
	- He bought a house.
	- You can rely on Martin.
	- Asma is reading a fairy tale.
S+ TV+ DO+ IO	- The chief granted me a medal.
S+ IV+ Adverbial/	- Ali arrived at 10 o'clock.
Prepositional phrase	- My pen is on the table.
	- The cat is in the kitchen.
	- Veronica is arguing again.
	- Helena is coming to lunch.
S+ LV+ Adj	- The lesson was interesting.
	- To go further became more
	exciting.
	- He is a teacher.
	- She was kind.
S+ V+ to infinitive (+	- Jane hesitated to phone the office.
Complement)	- Tom likes to arrive early.
	- Tom loves to do the household
	chores.
S+ V+ V-ing/ gerund	- Noah quit smoking.
5 5	- I admitted stealing from the store.

S+ TV+ DO+ to infinitive	Tony hates his wife to lose her		
	temper.		
S+ TV+ DO+ V-ing/ gerund	John regrets Sali's leaving.		
S+ TV+ DO+ Prepositional	- I cleared the pavement of rubbish.		
phrase	- The waiter confused his name		
	with my friend.		
S+ TV+ DO (clause)	Bill had decided what to do next.		

<sup>\*</sup> S= Subject; Verb= V; DO= Direct Object; IO= Indirect Object; Adj= Adjective; TV= Transitive Verb; IV= Intransitive Verb; LV= Linking Verb

#### **b.** Compound Sentence

A compound sentence is a type of sentence with more than one independent clause and linked by a coordinating conjunction such as, *and*, *but*, *or*, *or else*, *otherwise*, *either...or*, *neither...nor*, as in:

- He sold his house and he lost his job
- I went to the cinema **but** I didn't enjoy the film.
- Yaseen quit school and joined the navy.
- Take this ball **or** drop that one.
- I should arrive in time; otherwise I will be in trouble.
- You must drive carefully **or else** you will have an accident.
- He will either play football or watch TV.
- He neither got his car fixed nor bought a new one.

#### c. Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is a type of sentence in which there is a main/ independent clause, which can stand alone and make some sense, and one or more subordinate/ dependent clauses which can't stand alone. The two clauses are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions of adverbial clauses and relative clauses; such as (although, because, despite, so, before, and who). The subordinate clause can be a relative clause, or an adverbial clause.

- "We went to visit my cousin although he had been unfriendly to us" is a complex sentence as it is composed of:
- a main clause: (we went to visit my cousin).
- a subordinate clause: (although he had been unfriendly to us).

## Similarly in:

Although Sami was polite, hardworking and helpful at work, his colleagues brought out the worst in him.

### More examples include:

- <u>If I can help you</u>, <u>I will try</u>. subordinate clause main clause
- <u>He drove his car while he was using his cell phone.</u>
  main clause subordinate clause
- Although the car is old, it is still serviceable.
  subordinate clause main clause

#### d. Compound Complex- Sentence

The compound complex sentence consists of two or more independent clauses, one of which is complex, as in:

"The hurricane stopped, and we went to Shumari Wild Reserve where we had lost our team leader."

The hurricane stopped, and we went to Shumari Wild Reserve Independent clause 1 Independent clause 2

and we went to Shumari Wild Reserve where we had lost our team leader.

**Complex sentence** 

Exercise	<b>(3)</b>
----------	------------

<b>A.</b>	Defin	ne the	under	lined	word	ds:	(noun,	verb,	adjective,	adverb,
prepos	ition.	deterr	miner.	pron	oun.	or	coniun	ction)	).	

- 1. I <u>helped</u> an old man.
- 2. She usually drinks milk.
- 3. That lady is really rich.
- 4. I'm lucky to have a few friends in Pakistan.
- 5. If I were you, I wouldn't join that nasty group.
- 6. Robert should see the doctor.
- 7. Alison is <u>very</u> upset.
- 8. Mr. Brown will be sitting at the bus stop.
- **B.** Identify the subject, verb, complement, and the modifier in each of the following sentences.
  - 1. Fadi is buying a new house in Amman.
  - 2. Eddi has been shopping downtown.

#### Exercise (4)

Write the name	of the	underlined	phrases next	to every	v sentence:

- I was playing volleyball. ( )
   Macbeth usually drinks milk. ( )
   He is absolutely idle. ( )
   She is in the pool. ( )
- 5. I will move <u>before you arrive</u>. ( )

#### Exercise (5)

Read the following sentences and write the sentence	type next to
each one. (simple, compound or complex)	

- 1. I like to feed the homeless. ( )
- 2. Why Mohammad is kind with her is not my problem. ( )
- 3. Erick does the painting and designs the models. ( )
- 4. Before Sara turned the radio off, her husband got annoyed. ( )
- 5. The maintenance of the arrivals terminals will take more time.( )
- 6. Adam sleeps early every night. ( )
- 7. It is an ancient piece of metal, but it is a precious one. ( )
- 8. I can remember what you told me. ( )

# 4. An Introduction to Verbs

English verbs can be generally classified as *dynamic/activity* verbs and *state* verbs. This broad classification include the auxiliary and main verbs- *be* (*is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *am*) *have* (*have*, *has*, *had*), *do* (*do*, *does*, *did*), *modals* (can, must) and *action* verbs (*work*, *play* and *laugh*). Consider the following examples:

- 'She/He *is* angry'. 'I *am* an English teacher'. 'I/He/She *was* awesome. 'We/They/You *are* humble'. 'We/They/You *were* outstanding.'
- 'She *did* her best'. 'Do me a favor'. 'He *does* painting.'
- 'She *has* a nice car'. 'I/ We/ They *have* fashionable glasses.'
- I *play* football regularly. (play: action verb)
- I *have* a car. (have: state verb; have= possess)
- I *must* go right now. (must: a modal verb)

#### 4.1 Auxiliary Verbs

An auxiliary verb is used in forming tenses (present, past, future), moods (indicative, imperative and subjunctive) and voices (passive, active). Auxiliary verbs include 'be: is, are, am, was, were', 'do: do, does, did', and 'have: have, has, had'.

The verb 'to be'

<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Future</u>
I am (I'm)	I was	I will be (I'll be)
You are (singular)	You were	You will be (You'll be)
(You're)		
He is (He's)	He was	He will be (He'll be)
She is (She's)	She was	She will be (She'll be)
It is (It's)	It was	It will be (It'll be)
We are (We're)	We were	We will be (We'll be)
You are (plural) (You're)	You were	You will be (You'll be)
They are (They're)	They were	They will be (They'll
-		be)

#### The verb 'to have'

<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Future</u>
I have (I've)	I had	I will have (I'll have)
You have (singular)	You	You will have (You'll
(You've)	had	have)
He has (He's)	He had	He will have (He'll have)
She has (She's)	She had	She will have (She'll have)
It has (It's)	It had	It will have (It'll have)
We have (We've)	We had	We will have (We'll have)
You have (plural) (You've)	You	You will have (You'll
	had	have)
They have (They've)	They	They will have (They'll
-	had	have)

#### The verb 'to do'

<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Future</u>
I do	I did	I will do (I'll do)
You do (singular)	You did	You will do (You'll do)
He does	He did	He will do (He'll do)
She does	She did	She will do (She'll do)
It does	It did	It will do (It'll do)
We do	We did	We will do (We'll do)
You do (plural)	You did	You will do (You'll do)
They do	They did	They will do (They'll do)

- **a.** The *verb 'to be'* is used as an auxiliary verb with the 'ing' form of the main verb to the progressive tense, as in:

  We are living in NY powedays
  - We are living in NY nowadays.
- **b.** The *verb 'to be'* is used as an auxiliary verb with the past participle of the main verb to form the passive voice, as in:

  My chairs *are made* in Jordan.
- **c.** The *verb 'to be'* is used as an auxiliary verb with the main verb to form negative sentences, for example:

I am not taking the chance.

**d.** The *verb 'to have'* is used as an auxiliary verb with the past participle of the main verb to form the perfect tenses, as in:

They *have completed* the task.

He *had realized* the fault.

**e.** The *verb'* to do' is used as an auxiliary verb with the main verb to form negative sentences. Example:

She *doesn't believe* in her eldest brother.

**f.** The *verb 'to do'* is also used with the main verb to form questions, as in:

**Does** she **play** well?

**g.** The *verb* 'to do' is used to form sentences in which the verb is emphasized, as in:

He does like shopping.

#### 4.2 Modal Verbs

A modal verb is a verb that helps the main verb to express a range of meanings including possibility, probability, wants, wishes, necessity, permission, suggestions, etc. The main modal verbs include: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *will*, *would*, *shall*, *ought to*, *should*, *must*. Modal verbs have only one form, and they are followed by the base form of verbs.

## **Examples:**

- We should leave right now.
- I must arrive by dawn.
- Could you give him a message?
- You can have another bike.

#### 4.3 Linking Verbs

A linking verb links a subject with its complement. Unlike other verbs, linking verbs don't denote an action but indicate a state. The following are examples of linking verbs:

'look', 'become', 'be', 'appear', 'seem', 'feel', 'keep', 'remain', 'smell', 'sound', 'taste', 'stay', 'turn', and 'grow', as in:

- Fred **looks** much better today.
- Robert became a Muslim.

- You are a fool.
- Sue **seems** an intelligent person.

# 4.4 Contracted forms of pronouns with auxiliary verbs

The following table shows how to write the short/ contracted forms of pronouns with verbs 'to be', 'to have', 'will' and 'would':

Pronouns	Contractions	Examples
he, she, it	's (is/ has)	he's, she's, it's
you, they, we	're	you're, they're, we're
I	'm	I'm
I, you, they, we	've	I've, you've, they've, we've
I, you, we, they, he, she	'd (had/ would)	I'd, you'd, we'd, they'd, he'd, she'd,
		it'd
I, you, we, they, he, she	'll (will/ shall)	I'll, you'll, we'll, they'll, he'll, she'll,
		it'll
let	's (us)	let's

Full form	Short form	Full form	Short form
is not	isn't	may not	mayn't
are not	aren't	ought not	oughtn't
cannot	can't	need not	needn't
could not	couldn't	dare not	daren't
did not	didn't	shall not	shan't
does not	doesn't	would not	wouldn't
do not	don't	am not	aren't
has not	hasn't	should not	shouldn't
have not	haven't	was not	wasn't
had not	hadn't	were not	weren't
must not	mustn't	will not	won't

Note: contracted forms are used in informal style of language.

- Can you lend me your book? No, I'm sorry. (informal style); No, I can't. (informal style) No, I am sorry. (formal style); No, I cannot. (formal style)

# 5. Tenses

"To some people, gambling is more important than their careers. They often steal money in order to make another Ball. Yesterday in a TV interview, a gambler confessed that he had lost fifty thousand pounds in a single week although he had no regular job. The problem is that most people have become indoctrinated with the idea that having more money even through gambling, will provide respect for them..."

**5.1** Tense is the form of verb that is used to show the time at which the action takes place.

See the following table which shows the verb form that each pronoun takes in different tenses using the same base verb (**drink**).

Simple present	I, we, you, they	drink	coffee every morning
	He, she, it	drinks	coffee every morning
	I	am	coffee now
		drinking	
<b>Present progressive</b>	We, you, they	are	coffee now
	200000000000000000000000000000000000000	drinking	
	He, she, it	is	coffee now
		drinking	
Simple past	I, we, you, they,	drank	coffee yesterday
	he, she, it		
	We, you, they	were	coffee when Ann came
Past progressive		drinking	back
	He, she, it, I	was	coffee when Ann came
		drinking	back
	We, you, they, I	have	coffee for ten years
Present perfect		drunk	
	He, she, it	has	coffee for ten years
		drunk	
Past perfect	I, we, you, they,	had	coffee before Jeff left
	he, she, it	drunk	

	We, you, they, I	have	coffee for three hours
Present perfect		been	
progressive		drinking	
	He, she, it	has been	coffee for three hours
		drinking	
Past perfect	I, we, you, they,	had been	coffee for three hours
progressive	he, she, it	drinking	
Simple future tense	I, we, you, they,	will	coffee tomorrow
_	he, she, it	drink	morning

#### Table (2) Tenses: adverbs of frequency and examples

**Note: Base form** and **bare infinitive** are used interchangeably in the book.

# **Tense: Present Simple**

Form: "he, she, it+ base form of verb+ (s)/ or (-es)", if the verb ends in, s, ss, sh, ch, x."

" I, they, we, you+ base form of verb"

Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: always, usually, sometimes, never, habitually, hardly ever, every+ time, occasionally, rarely, seldom, daily, weekly, yearly, annually, scarcely, regularly, frequently, once/ twice + time (once a week)

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To express facts/	1. The sun <i>rises</i>	* Does+ he, she, it+
general statements	from the east.	base form+ object/ complement?
2. To talk about	2. She <i>washes</i> her	-Does he speak
Routine/actions	face regularly.	English?
happen all the time/	- We always <i>visit</i>	
habits	our cousins.	* Do+ I, they, we,
		you+ base form of
3. Permanent actions	3. I <i>live</i> in Jordan.	verb+ object/
4. Arrangements as	4. The train <i>leaves</i> at	complement?
per a time table	10 am.	-Do you like
		swimming?

# **Tense: Present Progressive**

**Form**: (*I* ) am , ( he, she, it) is, ( they, we, you) are + verb+ ing **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: now, at the moment, right now, this+time(this month, listen!, look!, see!, be careful!

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To describe an	1. I am writing a	* am+ I/ is+ he, she,
action in progress at	letter at the moment.	it/ are+ they, we, you
the time of speaking	- Look! He's	+ verb+ ing?
	studying.	
2. Future actions for	2. She is leaving	- Is he playing
which arrangements	tomorrow morning.	football?
have already been		- Am I going
made		tonight?
3. To describe	3. They are living in	- Are you watching
temporary actions	Irbid.	T.V now?

# **Tense: Past Simple**

**Form**: he, she, it, you, they, we, I+ past simple form of verb (e.g. walked, ran, drank)

**Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: Yesterday, ago, last+time (last month), past dates (1989), before

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To express the idea	1. He slept for eight	* Did+ subject+ base
that an action started	hours last night.	form of verb+ O/
and finished in the	- They <i>bought</i> a new	complement?
past (completed	house yesterday.	- <i>Did</i> she <i>sleep</i> for
action)	- I studied French	eight hours?
	when I was a child.	
2. To list a series of	2. She <i>called</i> Dove	- <i>Did</i> they <i>buy</i> a new
completed actions in	before she hit the	house?
the past	car.	
	- I <i>finished</i> work at	
	8:00, <i>went</i> to the	
	beach and <i>met</i> a	
	friend at 10:30.	

**Tense: Past Progressive Form**: - I, she, it, he+ was+ v+ ing

- we, they, you+ were+ v+ing **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: while, as, when

Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: while, as, when			
Use	Examples	Yes/ No question	
1. To describe an	1. He was brushing	*Was+ he, she, it, I /	
interrupted action in	his teeth when she	were+ we, you,	
the past (an action	called.	they+ v+ ing?	
happened in the past			
and was going on		- Was he brushing	
when another action		his teeth?	
happened)		- Were they waiting	
2. To describe an	2. They were	for Sammy when the	
action that was in	playing tennis at	earthquake started?	
progress around a	6:30 last night.		
particular time in the			
past			
3. To express the idea	3. While Allen was		
that the actions are	telling her father's a		
parallel- were	story, Janet was		
happening at the	watching TV.		
same time			
4. With words such	4. She was always		
as 'always' or	coming to class late.		
'constantly' to express	- Sue was constantly		
the idea that	talking. She annoyed		
something irritating	me.		
often happened in the			
past			

#### **Tense: Present Perfect**

**Form**: (he, she, it)+ has (we, they, you, I)+ have+ p.p **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: since, for, already, yet, just, so far, all my life, how long, recently, before, this (year)

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To describe an	1. Sam to his father:	*Has/ have+
activity that began in	I've just reviewed	subject+ p. p?
the past and just	me lessons.	
ended		- Has he reviewd his
2. To talk about	2. I have written	lessons?
experiences and	three novels since	- Have you been to
achievements	1999.	Jerash before?
3. To describe an	3. I have cut my	
activity that	finger.	
happened in the past		
but it has present		
results/ consequences		

# **Tense: Present Perfect Progressive**

**Form**: - he, she, it+ Has+ been+ verb+ ing you, they, we, I+ have+ been+ verb+ ing

Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: since, for, yet, just, recently, this (year), how long, this+ time, all+ time

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To describe prolonged/ repeated actions; to describe incomplete/ not	1. He has been listening to music for a long time They have been	* Has/ have+ subject+ been+ verb+ ing?
finished action  2. To deduce the occurrence of actions in the recent past from their present consequences and	sleeping all day.  2. I am really tired. I have been running.  - There is an ashtray on the desk.  Someone has been	<ul> <li>- Has he been</li> <li>listening to music for</li> <li>a long time?</li> <li>- You look wet. Have</li> <li>you been running in</li> <li>the rain?</li> <li>- She has a</li> </ul>

results	smoking.	stomachache. Has
	- I see a lot of spots	she been eating too
	on Sam's shirt. He	many sweets?
	has been painting all	
	day.	

# **Tense: Past Perfect**

**Form**: He, she, it, I, they, you, we+ had+ p.p

Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: when , as soon

as, the moment, before, after, by the time, already

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
To describe	- He <i>had</i> already	* Had+ subject+ p.p?
something which	cooked lunch by the	
happened before	time his father came	- Had you learnt
another action in the	home.	Arabic before you
past	- We had learnt two	went to school?
	languages before we	
	went to school.	

# **Tense: Past Perfect Progressive**

**Form**: He, she, it, I, they, we, you+had+ been+ verb+ ing **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: by/ at that time, by then, for, since

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
To describe repeated	- I was tired because	* Had+ subject+
or prolonged action	I had been driving	been+ v+ ing?
in the past; to	since 7 o'clock.	
describe an action		- Had you been
that happened for		washing your clothes
long in the past and		since she left home?
stopped before a		
specific time in the		
past		

**Tense: Simple Future** 

**Form**: I, we+ shall+ infinitive/ he, she, it, they, you+ will+ infinitive

Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: tomorrow,

next (year), dates in future (2080), today

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To talk about an	1. Rashid will meet	* Will+ subject+
action that will	his friends	bare infinitive?
happen in the future	tomorrow.	
	- They will meet	- Will he meet his
	their families next	friends tomorrow?
	month.	
2. To predict	2. It will rain	
something	tomorrow.	
3. To make a promise	3. I will buy you a	
	new house.	

#### **Tense: Future Perfect**

**Form**: He, she, it, I, we, they, you+ will have+ p.p **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: by, by the

time, by then

Use:.

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
To describe an event	- I will have retired	* Will+ subject+
that will be	by August 2015.	have+ p.p?
completed before a	- They will have	- Will you have
specific future time	finished the task by	retired by August?
	next April.	

# **Tense: Future Progressive**

Form: He, she, it, I, we, they, you+ Will be+ verb+ ing Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions: tomorrow, next

(month), this (month), until (6 o'clock)

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
1. To describe an	1. At 6:30 tomorrow	* Will+ subject+ be+

event that will be in	evening I will be	verb+ ing?
progress at a future	sleeping.	
point		- Will you be reading
2. To describe	2. Do you need	a novel by 10 a.m?
something that will	anything from the	
happen as a matter of	post office? I'll be	
course	passing on my way	
3. To describe an	home.	
event that will	3. I will be reading a	
happen before a	novel tomorrow	
future point of time	morning.	
and continues after		
that point		

# **Tense: Future Perfect Progressive**

**Form**: He, she, it, I, we, they, you+ will+ have+ been+ verb-ing **Adverbs of frequency/ time expressions**: by+ future time, by the time, by then.

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
It emphasizes the	- Her husband will	* will+ subject+
duration of an	have been sleeping	have+ been+ verb-
activity that will be in	for five hours by the	ing?
progress before	time she gets home.	- Will you have been
another time or event	_	studying by the time
in the future		I arrive?

# **Future Tense with (Be going to)**

**Form**: (I am/ he, she, it+ is/ they, you, we+ are)+ going to+ infinitive

Adverbs of frequency: tomorrow, next, today, now

Use	Examples	Yes/ No question
To describe an action	- I am going to see	* Am/ is / are+ subject
that will happen in	the dentist tomorrow	+going to+ base verb?
the future (planned		- Are you going to see
event/ intended to be		the dentist tomorrow?
done).		

**Note:** Never, ever, and yet in present perfect tense:

- We use 'never, to say we have not done something at any time, as in: I've never played basketball.
- 'Ever' means at any time in your past life, and it is used to ask other people about things they've done, as in:

#### Have you ever been to Paris?

- 'Yet' is used in negative statements and in questions, as in:

I haven't visited Ali yet. Have you not visited Ali yet?

#### Read the following examples of different tenses:

- It snows in Syria. (Simple present/ fact)
- I watch T.V every day. (Simple present/ routine)
- It *snowed yesterday*. (Simple past)
- I watched T.V yesterday. (Simple past)
- It *will snow tomorrow*. (Simple future)
- He *will be playing* computer games when we get home. (Future progressive)
- He *is watching* a film *right now*. (Present progressive)
- I have already eaten apples. (Present perfect)
- I had already drunk tea when I arrived. (Past perfect)
- I will have finished when she arrives. (Future perfect)
- I have been studying for two hours. (Present perfect progressive)
- I had been studying for two hours before Fred came. (Past perfect progressive)
- I'll have been studying by the time you arrive. (Future perfect progressive)
- My classes begin at 7:30. (Simple present)
- Huda never goes to bed before midnight. (Simple present)
- I rarely go shopping in winter. (Simple present)

### Exercise (6)

A: Use the simple past tense or the past progressive in the following sentences as appropriate.

- 1. Amal .....(eat) dinner when her friend called.
- 2. While Asma was cleaning the room, her father.....(sleep)
- 3. At three o'clock this morning, Dan.....(study)
- 4. Josef ..... to Denmark last week. (go)
- 5. While Harry was writing the daily report, Robert ......for more information. (look)

## B: Correct the verbs in brackets in the following statements of facts:

- 1. Wood ...... (float) on water.
- 2. Man ..... (be) mortal.
- 3. Man ...... (have) reason.
- 4. Salt ..... (dissolve) in water.
- 5. People ..... (inhale) oxygen.
- 6. Water ...... (freeze) at zero degree centigrade.
- 7. Chickens ..... (lay) eggs.
- 8. A plant ...... (have) roots.
- 9. Birds ..... (have) wings.
- 10. Oil ..... (be) flammable.

# C: Read the following sentences and then answer the question that follows.

- a. I had already eaten the meal before Asma got the house
- b. I was eating when Asma got the house.
- Write the sentence which expresses that the eating was completed when Asma arrived.

# D: Read the following sentences and then answer the question that follows.

- a. I will be writing a letter at 7:30.
- b. I will have written a letter by 7:30.
- Which sentence tells that writing a letter will be finished at 7:30?

### Exercise (7)

Use the simple past tense or the present perfect in the following sentences.

- 1. Bob .....(see) this movie before.
- 2. John ....(swim) in the pool last night.
- 3. Conrad ......(read) the newspaper already.
- 4. I....( not, begin) to study for the final test yet.
- 5. Joan.... (travel) around the world by boat.

### Exercise (8)

Use the simple past tense or the past perfect tense in the following sentences.

- 1. Bob .....(read) my letter after he .....(meet) me.
- 2. After John ....(wash) his clothes, he began to study.
- 3. Maria ......(join) the army after she had graduated from the School of Armor..

### Exercise (9)

Use the simple present tense or the present progressive tense in the following sentences.

- 1. The train.....(leave) at 7:30 every morning.
- 2. We always .....(go) skiing.
- 3. She rarely ....(get) home in time.
- 4. The sun .....(rise) from the east.
- 5. I.....(work) in Kuwait nowadays.
- 6. She.....(buy) a new pair of shoes right now.

# 6. Sit/ Set, Lie/ Lay, Rise/ Raise; and Participle Verbs

### 6.1 lie/lay, sit/set, and rise/raise.

These verbs sometimes cause problems. And to solve the problem you should remember which verbs are transitive and which are intransitive.

### **6.1.1** lie, sit, and rise are intransitive verbs.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Meaning
lie	lay	lain	rest, be situated in a
			place
sit	sat	sat	take a seat
rise	rose	risen	get up, increase

### Examples:

- Ahmad lay on the grass just few minutes ago.
- I'll lie down for a nap.
- I'll sit in the shade.
- Ali sat on the beach.
- The sun rises early in the summer.

### **6.1.2.** lay, set and raise are transitive verbs.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Meaning	
lay	laid	laid	to put something/ or	
			somebody on a surface	
set	set	set	put	
raise	raised	raised	lift, elevate, to increase	
			something	

### Examples:

- Ahmad laid his clothes on the bed.
- I'll set my favourite flowers in the sun.
- Raise your hands.

- The government is going to raise the price of oil.

### 6.2 Participle forms.

Dealing with forming gerunds and the past (participle) forms of verbs is inevitable. Here are some **rules of how to spell '- ing' and 'ed' at the end of verbs:** 

- ❖ Verbs that end in 'e':
  - If the word ends in 'e', drop the 'e' to add- ing, as in:

have= having

date= dating

hope= hoping

If the verb ends in 'ee', the final 'e' is not dropped, as in:

agree = agreeing.

• If the word ends in 'e', add 'd' without dropping the 'e', as in:

date= dated

hope= hoped

❖ In one syllable verbs that end in a vowel+ a consonant, double the last consonant to add 'ing' 'or' 'ed', as in:

stop= stopping, stopped

beg= begging, begged

But in 'fix' you don't double the last consonant:

fix = fixing, fixed

❖ In 2<sup>nd</sup> syllable stressed two- syllable verbs that end in a vowel+ a consonant you double the last consonant, as in: control= controlling, controlled

prefer= preferring, preferred

❖ If the verb ends in two consonants, just add the 'ing'/ 'ed', as in: start= starting, started

❖ If the verb ends in 'y' that is preceded by a vowel, keep the 'y' and just add the 'ing' or 'ed', as in: enjoy= enjoying, enjoyed

But if the 'y' is preceded by a consonant, change 'y' to 'i' to add 'ed', and keep the 'y' if you want to add 'ing', as in: study= studying, studied

❖ If the verb ends in 'ie', just add 'd' to form the past tense or the past participle; and change 'ie' to 'y' to add 'ing', as in: die= dying, died

### 7. Non-Progressive Verbs

**7.1** While progressive verbs express activities in progress, non-progressive verbs express existing state. Non-progressive verbs can't be written in the '-ing form'. The following are non-progressive verbs, which include the following groups:

### a. Mental State-Verbs. These include:

know, realize, understand, believe, think, imagine, want, need, prefer, remember and recognize. For example:

- I believe in almighty God.
- She needs you.
- I understand your point.
- He thinks you are mistaken.
- He *imagines* weird things.
- I remember my father's advice.
- I *know* the truth.

### **b.** Emotional State-Verbs. These include:

love, hate, like, dislike, appreciate, fear and care. As in:

- Ann *hates* articles about computer games. (*'hates'* is non progressive as it describes Ann's emotional state).
- I *like* swimming in the hotel pool.
- I appreciate your help.
- **c. Sense Perceptions-Verbs**. These include: *smell, taste, feel, see, hear,* look, seem *and* notice. For example:
  - This omelet smells nice.
  - The sea food tastes delicious.
  - He *seems* friendly.
  - Janet *looks* so attractive.
  - The cat *feels* soft.

- **d. Possession-Verbs,** as in: *possess, own, belong, lack* and *have*. Examples include:
  - I don't *belong* to this nation.
  - Alia *owns* three apartment-buildings.
  - She *possesses* a Mercedes company.
  - They *have* plenty of food.
  - Ali *lacks* confidence.
- **e.** In addition to the following verbs: *cost, be, exist, owe, appear, contain, consist of, include, be worth* and *weigh.* For example:
  - This car *is worth* \$ 2000.
  - That wallet *costs* 20 dollars.
  - She *is* a great actor.
  - My father weighs 200 pounds.
  - Water *consists* of oxygen and hydrogen.
  - This classroom *contains* 20 seats.
  - Yousef *owes* me 20,000 Euro.
  - Mount Nebo *exists/ is* in Jordan.
- **7.2** However, the following verbs can also be progressive to give a special meaning: *think*, *have*, *small*, *taste*, *see*, *feel*, *look*, *appear*, *weigh* and *be*. For example:

### (Think) in the following sentences:

- I am *thinking* of building a wooden house. (*'think'* refers to a mental activity)
- I *think* that my dictionary is lost. (*'think'* expresses a mental state)

### (Have) in the following sentences:

- We are *having* lunch. (it means the activity of *eating*)
- I have a farm. (it means *possess*)

### 8. Causative Verbs (make, have, get, let)

"...Because there were some boats out of order, *I had them repaired* in a specialized company. Whilst sailing, there were between 100 and 200 enemy ships that *made me change* the direction of my ship. Being the captain of my ship, *I had my assistants prepare* the life rafts in case of emergency. Some of them showed a certain level of cooperation and *I got them to sort everything out....*" Part of a Dream.

**8.1** 'Make, have, get and let' can be used to express the idea that someone causes another to do something.

### For example:

- **a**. **I** *made* **Ali** *open* **the door**. (It means that Ali had no choice. I insisted that he open the door. I **forced** him to do it).
- **b.** I had Ali open the door. (It means that Ali opened the door because I requested/ asked him to do so).

**Note:** Causative 'have' and 'make' are followed by the bare infinitive.

c. I got Ali to open the door. (It means that I managed to persuade Ali to open the door)

**Note:** Causative 'get' is followed by 'to infinitive' (to+ simple form of a verb).

- **d.** 'Let' means 'permit/ allow'. 'Let' takes the base form of a verb (bare infinitive), whereas 'permit/ or allow' takes 'to-infinitive', as in:
  - 1. John let me swim in the pool. (Subject+ let+ object+ base form of verb)
  - 2. John allowed me to swim in the pool. (Subject+ allow/ permit+ object+ to-infinitive)

### 8.2 Have/ get something done

We can use 'have'/get' in a passive pattern to mean that an arrangement made for someone to do something for you.

### **Examples:**

- I *had the furniture delivered*. (someone else delivered the furniture)
- You should *have that video fixed*. (by the technician)
- Mary *had a new house built*. (not by herself)
- I'm going to *have my hair cut*. (by the barber)
- I must get the furniture delivered.
- I got that video repaired.
- I'm going to get my eyes tested.
- She is *getting her house decorated*.

### Exercise (10)

### A: Correct the verbs in brackets.

- 1. The student made Fredrick.....(leave) the classroom.
- 2. Helena had Salim.....(repair) the car.
- 3. Allen got Hamdan.....(type) her essay.
- 4. I had the students.....(write) a formal letter.
- 5. Maria let Adnan....(sign) the forms.
- 6. Mariam allows her sons...(play) for late hours.
- 7. Salamah permitted his daughter....(swim) with her friends.

# B: Study the following pair of sentences and answer the question below.

- a. I've taken my shirt to be shortened.
- b. I've shortened my shirt.

Which sentence indicates that the tailor/ not the speaker has shortened the shirt. .....

### C: Choose the correct word in brackets.

- 1. The boy ..... (raised / rose) his hands.
- 2. Brown ...... (set/ sat) in a chair because he was exhausted.
- 3. I ...... (set / sat) you pen over there an hour ago.
- 4. Johnson ..... (laid / lay) on his bed.
- 5. If I were you, I would ...... (lie / lay ) down and sleep.

### 9. Gerund and to-infinitive (playing/ to play)

"I spent two hours thinking about which place might encourage you to make a visit to it. Well, today I am going to talk about Wadi Rum. Gentlemen, when I first visited Wadi Rum, I saw hundreds of people climbing the moon-red mountains. I am here today to try to begin planning a visit for this extraordinary site. You shouldn't be hesitant to go there. Wadi Rum ..."

A gerund is the -ing form of a verb, as in 'playing'. A to-infinitive is 'to+ the simple base form of a verb, as in 'to play'.

### 9.1 The uses of –ing form of verbs

The uses of the 'ing' form of verb include:

- **a.** A gerund as a "**noun**" which could be used as a subject/ or an object in a sentence, e.g.
  - *Sleeping* early is good for the health. (*sleeping* is the subject)
  - I'm talking about *visiting* Petra. (*visiting* is the object)
- **b.** A participle to express an idea in present/ or past **progressive** tense, as in;
  - Ann is *swimming*.
  - Ralph was *painting*.
- **c.** A present participle used as an **adjective**, as in;
  - surprising events developing countries
  - daring commander sleeping women
- **d.** After some verbs, including: **smell, feel, taste, hear, see, listen, watch, notice, find, catch**. The following pattern is followed: **(verb+ noun/ object pronoun+ verb+ ing).** Examples:
  - I saw Hani **climbing** the mountain.
    - v o gerund
  - I heard you *crying* last night.

- I felt him *lying*.
- I found Shaza *punishing* a little child.
- e. After 'waste' and 'spend' when they are followed by time expressions, following this pattern (waste/ spend+ expression of time+ verb+ ing).
  - Mr. Ibrahim <u>spent</u> <u>five weeks</u> <u>looking</u> for a new job. v time expr. v+ ing
  - Mrs. Ibrahim wastes three hours a day watching TV.
- f. After 'sit', 'stand', and 'lie' when they are followed by place expressions, following this pattern (sit/ stand/ lie + expression of place+ Verb+ ing).
  - I <u>sat in the corridor **revising**</u> my new book v place expr. v+ ing
  - I stood there *thinking* about you.
  - She lay in her bed *waiting* for her husband.
- **g.** After 'go' to express an activity done for recreation, as in:

go shopping, go fishing, go hiking, go hunting, go canoeing, go dancing, go sightseeing, go skiing, go swimming, go sledding, go tobogganing, etc, as in:

"I usually go shopping at weekends".

**h.** After certain verbs that are mentioned in paragraph (9.3).

### 9.2 Verbs followed by to- infinitives

**a**. Some verbs are followed immediately by to- infinitive, this includes: plan, intend, decide, hope, promise, seem, agree, offer desire, attempt, prepare, tend, claim, forget, demand, hesitate, learn, refuse, appear, pretend, ask, afford, expect, want, need, advice and would like.

Examples include:

- Ala *expects to begin* studying applied linguistics next month.
- I *learnt to swim* when I was ten.
- The chief <u>decided to postpone</u> the conference.
- Katrin *agreed to act* as a logistic officer.

To form a negative out of those verbs you put 'not' before the infinitive. As in:

I promised to arrive early.

I promised not to arrive early. (Negative)

**b**. Some verbs are followed by a noun or pronoun (as an object) and then to- infinitive, including:

"tell, invite, require, beg, convince, expect, instruct, persuade, prepare, promise, urge, ask, permit, order, allow, warn, force, want, would like, encourage, and remind", as in:

The boss *forced me to shout* at her.

I told Benedict to leave at 7 am.

The teacher <u>encouraged the students to practice</u> English in the classroom.

I urged Leon to appear in class.

I asked Bell to call me at noon time.

### (Subject+ verb+ object form of pronoun/ noun+ to- infinitive)

### 9.3 Verbs followed by the gerund

- **a.** The following are common verbs followed by the gerund: enjoy, appreciate, admit, report, postpone, resent, practice, resist, can't help, resume, recall, risk, mind, quit, finish, avoid, delay, keep, miss, recommend, consider, discuss, mention and suggest, as in;
  - You should *keep running*.
  - Noah *quit smoking*.
  - I <u>admitted stealing</u> from the store.
  - You *enjoyed seeing* your school friends.

- **b.** Some verbs can be followed **by either the gerund or the to-infinitive with no change in meaning,** such as: *suggest, hate, regret, like, start, love, continue, try, dread, prefer, enjoy, hope, dislike,* and *can't stand.* 
  - I <u>started to study</u> after lunch. I <u>started studying</u> after lunch.
  - He <u>hates to ride</u> bikes. He <u>hates riding</u> bikes.
- c. Some verbs can be **followed by either the gerund or the to- infinitive, but the meaning changes,** as in: stop, forget, and remember.

### For example:

- Ali *stopped teaching* English. (He is not going to teach anymore)
- Ali *stopped to teach* English. (He stopped in order to teach English)
- **d.** Some verbs are followed by a noun or pronoun and then the gerund. However the noun or pronoun must appear in the possessive form (their calling, teacher's calling).

### **Examples:**

- He *regrets* her leaving.
- He regrets Ali's leaving.
- We are *looking forward to* their visiting next month.
- We are <u>looking forward to Hisham's visiting</u> next month.

(Subject+ verb+ possessive form of noun/ possessive adjective+ verb+ ing)

### 9.4 Adjectives followed by to- infinitives

Some adjectives are usually followed by infinitives, as in: 'Surprised to' in: 'I was *surprised to see* Samia at the party'. The following is a list of adjectives which are followed by infinitives as per this pattern (**Adjective+ to- infinitive**):

glad	fortunate	careful
happy	sorry	hesitant
pleased	ready	lucky

### **Examples include the following:**

- I'm *glad to be* with you.
- Are you *ready to go*?
- She's *pleased to take part* in the championship.
- Fredrick was *lucky to meet* the king at the independence celebration.
- Ali speaks so fast that it's *difficult to understand* what he's saying.
- I found that box *heavy to lift*.
- I found the homework *easy to do*.

### 9.5 Verb+ prepositions followed by the gerund

If a verb+ preposition, adjective+ preposition, noun+ preposition, or preposition is followed directly by a verb, the verb will be in the gerund form.

approve of	give up	insist on	succeed in	think about	think of
depend on	rely on v	worry about	intend on	count on ob	ject to
object to	confess to	afraid of	accuston	ned to succe	ssful in
choice of	excuse f	for method	d for poss	ibility of rea	son for

- She has no excuse **for dropping** the boxes.
- Mike is afraid of getting married soon.

### 9.6 Used to

### a. 'Used to infinitive':

This pattern is used to refer to something that happened regularly in the past, but it doesn't any more, as in:

- 1. When I was a child, I used to smoke heavily.
- 2. I used to drink alcohol. (it means I gave it up)

**b.** 'Be+ used to+ verb+ ing' pattern is used to mean 'accustomed to or familiar with'. As in:

Rasha is used to driving fast.

Are you used to walking long distance?

I am not used to swimming in the pool.

### 9.7 Hear+ object+ sing; hear+ object+ singing

We can use (see, hear, watch, feel, smell+ object) followed either by gerund or by infinitive without (to) to give specific meanings. For example:

- (1) I saw Mary killing the thief. (I saw part of the action)
- (2) I **saw** Mary **kill** the thief. (I saw the whole action)

The same is with the following examples:

- I **heard Hala sing** in her bedroom. I **heard Hala singing** in her bedroom.
- I watched Obama addressing his people. I watched Obama address his people.

### Exercise (11)

Using the verbs in brackets, choose the appropriate one to fill in the space in the following sentences

- 1. I am pleased ......from you. (to hearing/ to hear/ hearing)
- 2. I hope .....you soon. (to seeing/ see/ to see/ seeing)
- 3. I quit ..... (to smoke/ smoking)
- 4. The class bores the students. It is a ...... class. (bored/boring)
- 5. My dad made me..... the house. (leave/ to leave)
- 6. I got Shirazi ...... the items. (to fetch/ fetch/ fetching)
- 7. I had Kerry ......the ceiling. (to repair/ repair/ repairing)
- 8. When I was in the countryside, I used ......10 miles a day. (to walk/ to walking)
- 9. Tim avoided..... (looking/ to look) at Rehab.
- 10. Do you enjoy..... (playing/ to play) soccer?
- 11. Keep..... (talking/ to talk). I'm listening to you.
- 12. I hope..... (visiting / to visit) London next week.
- 13. Richard is expecting us......( to come/ coming) to class tomorrow.
- 14. They don't approve...... (us/our) leaving early.
- 15. Joe resented ......(Fadi/ Fadi's) losing the match.

### Exercise (12)

Complete the following table with the gerund and past form of the following verbs:

<u>Verbs</u>	<u>Gerund</u>	Past form
stop	stopping	stopped
die		
argue		
agree		
enjoy		
fix		

### Exercise (13)

Correct the verbs in brackets to fit the meaning of the sentences.

1.	Since 1999, I	Jerash city. (not/ v	isit).
2.		correspondents	.the news at this
2	minute. (present)	sha asma ta saa ma	(2011)
		, she came to see me.	· · · · ·
4.	really terrible.	e lorry for the last	six nours. I reer
5.	A: How long	(teach) ?	
	B: All my life.	,	
6.	As the teacher	the situation, the s	student fell down.
	(figure out)		
7.	My child always	milk. (drink)	
8.	At 9:00 last night t	hey (study)	English.
9.	Did you	(watch) TV last night	t?
10	. When my parents rang.	(have) bre	eakfast, the phone
11	0	(be) jumpi	ng. I
	usually do it once		6
12	<u> </u>	ng right now? I	
	(run) round the spe	0 0	
13	_	(walk) or run in t	he school yard?
14	. Do you go	. (swim)?	•
15	. What you	wear) at the	e moment?
16	you ever.	(see) the pyr	amids?
17	. I (observ	e) the demonstration	all the day. That
	is why I'm a bit tire	d.	
Exercise	(14)		
	e appropriate answ	er.	
	It is important		
	a. to keep		c. kept
2.	fruit and v	egetables helps you k	keep healthy.
	a. Eating	b. To eat	c. Ate

3.	You	u look tired. Wh	at have you	doing?
	a.	been	b. be	c. were
4.	My	friends could b	eabout their	new century
	plai			-
	a.	think	b. thinking	c. thinks
5.		been steal	ing the farmers' store	es. That is why
the	pol	ice are trying to	arrest him	-
	a.	He's	b. Hes'	c. Is he
6. I	oan .	gorgeοι	ıs.	
	<b>a.</b> ]	looks	b. look	c. were looking
7. ]	None	e of the students	smart enoug	h to win.
	a.	is	b. are	c. were
8. <i>A</i>	\ nu	mber of cadets.	visiting USM	A West Point.
	a.	is	b. are	c. was
9. ]	Dail	y exercises	good to keep you	rself fit
	a.	is	b. are	c. have
10.	Α (	chair with two a	rmscomfortabl	le to sit in.
	a.	is	b. are	c. have
11.	One	e million dollars	the price of thi	s piece.
	a.	is	b. are	c. were
12.	Nei	ither Ahmad nor	I fit to fight.	
	a.	is	b. are	c. am

### Exercise (15)

### Choose the suitable items to fill in the blanks.

become	wasn't	weren't	will use	
Next year,	our college tennis	team	new fields and courts	
for training	g. They	that profession	al last year; but now	
they've more and more well trained and organized.				

### Exercise (16)

Study the following pair of sentences and answer the question below.

- 1. Mrs. Bartlett has read a poem of Blake.
- 2. Mrs. Bartlett has been reading a poem of Blake for some time.

		tence indicates that Mrs. Bartlett has finishake?	hed reading a
Exerc	ise (	(17)	
	_	t of the sentence is each underlined phr	ase? (subject,
verb,	obje	ect, complement or adverbial).	
	1.	Jim had <u>a great time</u> .	<u>Object</u>
	2.	Everybody was brilliant.	
	3.	I <u>liked</u> your suggestion.	
	4.	I'm <u>happy</u> today.	•••••
	5.	She visits her grandmother weekly.	• • • • • • •
	6.		
Exerc	ise (	(18)	
Make	sen	tences by putting the following words in	n the correct
order.	. Yo	u can refer to the simple sentence form	S.
	1.	is/ people/ Ali/ to/ going/ meet/some	
	2.	have/ I/ 15/ buildings	
	3.	Aaron/ sick/ was/ yesterday	
	4.	is/ looking/ He/ at/ Gabriel	
	5.	gave/ they/ a/ him/ Swiss watch	

# 10. Negation (cannot, inseparable, hardly did he)

"Regarding the new position, if you are inexperienced, you should not apply for it. There is no place for inefficient, inactive, dishonest and illiterate people like you. You know, barely did Ali get a job there although he is brilliant..."

### **10.1** Main negative patterns

We can follow different patterns to change affirmative sentences into negative sentences, as follows:

- **a. First pattern:** To change an affirmative sentence into negative, add '**not**' to the auxiliary and modal verbs: is, was, are, were, am, has, have, had, must, should, etc., as in:
  - Sami **is** sleeping. (affirmative) Sami **is not** sleeping. (negative)
  - Suha **can** play well. (affirmative) Suha **cannot** play well. (negative)
  - Khadija **was lying** in her bed. (affirmative) Khadija **was not lying** in her bed. (negative)
  - George and Sara **were** rich. (affirmative) George and Sara **were not** rich. (negative)
  - Sandra **is going to** Japan. (affirmative) Sandra **is not going to** Japan. (negative)
  - Mark **has** seen the accident. (affirmative)
    Mark **has not** seen the accident. (negative)
  - I **must** go to Petra. (affirmative) I **must not** go to Petra. (negative)
  - She **had** visited Petra. (affirmative) She **had not** visited Petra. (negative)

**b. Second pattern:** When the verb is in the simple present tense and the subject is plural, put (do not) before the verb. But, when the subject is singular, put (does not) before the main verb and omit the (s/es). When (has) is used as the main verb, it becomes (have) as a main verb-in this pattern.

### Examples:

- Rashad **speaks** English fluently. (affirmative)
  Rashad **does not speak** English fluently. (negative)
- They **live** in Jordan. (affirmative) They **do not live** in Jordan. (negative)
- She **has** two kids. (affirmative) She **does not have** two kids. (negative)
- They **have** two kids. (affirmative) They **do not have** two kids. (negative)
- **c. Third pattern:** If the verb is in the past simple, use (did not) before the infinitive form of the verb. When (had) is used as a main verb, it becomes (have) as a main verb preceded by (did not).

### Examples:

- Rashad **watched** a comedy film. (affirmative)
  Rashad **did not watch** a comedy film. (negative)
- They **wrote** a short story. (affirmative)
  They **did not write** a short story. (negative)
- She **had** two children. (affirmative) She **did not have** two children. (negative)

### 10.2 Negative Prefixes (un-, il-, im-, dis-, ir-, in-):

They all mean 'not' or 'do the opposite of'. They can be used with verbs, adverbs, nouns and adjectives.

Un- is the most common negative prefix

Dis- is used with some adjectives

Il- is used with some adjectives beginning with 'l'

Im- is used with some adjectives beginning with 'm' or 'p'

Ir- is used with some adjectives beginning with 'r'

In- is used with many adjectives Examples:

<u>Word</u>	Negative/ Opposite
aware	<b>un</b> aware
employment	<b>un</b> employment
important	<b>un</b> important
common	<b>un</b> common
comfortable	<b>un</b> comfortable
clear	<b>un</b> clear
likely	<b>un</b> likely
limited	<b>un</b> limited
familiar	<b>un</b> familiar
friendly	<b>un</b> friendly
tidy	<b>un</b> tidy

<b>Word</b>	Negative/ Opposite
polite	<b>im</b> polite
moral	<b>im</b> moral
possible	<b>im</b> possible
partial	<b>im</b> partial
mortal	<b>im</b> mortal
perfect	<b>im</b> perfect
probable	<b>im</b> probable
pure	<b>im</b> pure
patient	<b>im</b> patient

<b>Word</b>	Negative/ Opposite
accurate	<b>in</b> accurate
complete	<b>in</b> complete
active	<b>in</b> active
separable	<b>in</b> separable
convenient	<b>in</b> convenient
credible	<b>in</b> credible

direct	<b>in</b> direct
visible	<b>in</b> visible
human	<b>in</b> human
correct	<b>in</b> correct
formal	<b>in</b> formal
sufficient	<b>in</b> sufficient

<u>Word</u>	Negative/ Opposite
appear(ed) /	<b>dis</b> appear(ed)
order	<b>dis</b> order
approve(d)	<b>dis</b> approve(d)
connect(ed)	<b>dis</b> connect(ed)
like	<b>dis</b> like
advantage	<b>dis</b> advantage
obey	<b>dis</b> obey
agreement	<b>dis</b> agreement
honest	<b>dis</b> honest

Word	Negative/ Opposite
recoverable	<b>ir</b> recoverable
resistible	<b>ir</b> resistible
regular	<b>ir</b> regular
responsible	<b>ir</b> responsible
reducible	<b>ir</b> reducible
replaceable	<b>ir</b> replaceable
responsive	<b>ir</b> responsive
relevant	<b>ir</b> relevant
religious	<b>ir</b> religious

<u>Word</u>	Negative/ Opposite
legal	<b>il</b> legal
logical	<b>il</b> logical
legitimate	<b>il</b> legitimate
liberal	<b>il</b> liberal

### Consider the following examples:

If you are **inexperienced**, you shouldn't apply for this teaching vacancy.

Everybody thinks that Sami and his sons are **unpleasant** people.

It's quite **impossible** to meet all the requirements.

Last meeting was one of the most **disorganized** meetings I've ever participated in.

Haifa and Sadeq are inseparable couple.

Du'a was fired because she was **inefficient**.

I feel awful every time **unexpected** visitors come to meet me.

### 10.3 Hardly, rarely, seldom, etc.

It is incorrect to have two negatives together in an English sentence (double negation). Thus, words of negative meaning must be used with a positive verb. When a sentence begins with a negative word, the subject and the verb are inverted, as in:

- **a.** I will **never** do this again.
  - **Never** *will I* do this again.
- **b.** I have **rarely** *drunk* coffee.
  - Rarely have I drunk coffee.
- **c.** He **hardly** *comes* to the meeting on time.
  - **Hardly** *does he* come to the meeting on time.
- **d.** He not only broke the window but also damaged the car.
  - Not only did he break the window but also damaged the car.
- e. You seldom see photos of jaguars.
  - **Seldom** *do you* see photos of jaguars.

- **f.** She scarcely remembers the events.
  - **Scarcely** *does she* remember the events.
- g. Ali barely arrived in time.
  - **Barely** *did Ali* arrive in time.
- **h.** Babies **no sooner** learn to crawl than they start walking.
  - <u>No sooner</u> *do babies* learn to crawl than they start walking.
- i. I little thought that I would be visiting Tokyo for work.
  - <u>Little did I</u> think that I would be visiting Tokyo for work.

### 10.4 Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs with not

The following are short/ contracted forms of auxiliary and modal verbs with 'not' as used in written texts. It is key to know which letters are dropped and where to put the apostrophe.

Full form	<b>Short form</b>	Full form	<b>Short form</b>
is not	isn't	may not	mayn't
are not	aren't	ought not	oughtn't
cannot	can't	need not	needn't
could not	couldn't	dare not	daren't
did not	didn't	shall not	shan't
does not	doesn't	would not	wouldn't
do not	don't	am not	aren't
has not	hasn't	should not	shouldn't
have not	haven't	was not	wasn't
had not	hadn't	were not	weren't
must not	mustn't	will not	won't

### 10.5 Imperative and negative imperative

We usually use the imperative to give instructions and to give orders/ or commands. It is important to know how to make positive and negative imperatives. Commands and instructions can be preceded by 'please'.

**a.** Use the base form of the verb to form an affirmative imperative sentence meaning (**Do**).

Please, turn off the lights.

*Listen* to your teacher.

*Close* the window.

*Tell* the truth.

Ali, speak up.

**Press** the 'enter' button.

Ahmed, *turn* the radio *on*.

**Be** quiet.

Pay your rent.

**b.** To form a negative imperative sentence you should begin with (**Don't**) then add the base form of the verb, as in:

*Don't run* in the corridor.

Don't upset your wife.

Don't smoke cigarettes in this area.

Don't work for long hours.

Don't think deep.

Don't count your money.

**Note:** In indirect command, the verbs of command are followed by (to-infinitive). To make a negative indirect command, add (not) before the to-infinitive (following this pattern: **subject+ verb+object+ not+ to-infinitive**):

- Hussein **told me to close** the door. Hussein **told me not to close** the door.

### Exercise (19)

### A: Choose the right answer.

1. Where was George born?

He ..... in Yemen.

- a. was b. is born c. was born d. were born
- 2. What does your cat drink?

It .....milk.

- a. drink b. drank c. drinks d.was drinking
- 3. What will you study in Harvard?

I ...... applied linguistics.

- a. study b. will study c. I'm studying d. studied
- 4. When do your brothers usually take new courses? They usually ...... new courses in summer.
  - a. takes b. is taking c. take d. took
- 5. How did Hanan go to London?

She.....to London by air.

- a. goes b. went c. is going d. go
- 6. How old are you?

I......... 28 years old.

- a. was b. is c. am d. are
- 7. He .....millions of money.
  - a. has b. have c. am d. do
- 8. ..... you go to school by bus?
  - a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Were

### Exercise (20)

### Change the sentences into negative.

- 1. I'm going to see my friend.
- 2. My father will come back soon.
- 3. I want to sell my apartment.
- 4. These shirts cost too much, so that I don't want to buy them.

- 5. My T-shirt cost a lot of money.
- 6. She shook hands with me.
- 7. Put this letter in the envelope.
- 8. He could leave early.
- 9. She has two daughters.
- 10. You had to come by ship.
- 11. Rice is grown in Egypt.

### Exercise (21)

### Select the appropriate verb form.

- 1. Maha (buy/ bought/ has bought) a new watch last week.
- 2. My father (leave/ will leave/ left) for Cairo next week.
- 3. It (be/ is/ are) hot in summer.
- 4. October, November and December (is/ were/ are/ have) the last three months of the year.
- 5. My mother (already buys/ has already bought/ will already buy) some fish.
- 6. A couple of days ago we (have/ had/ do/were) a wonderful party.
- 7. He has ..... for Moscow. (leave/ left)
- 8. Don't ...... (eat/ to eat/eating/ ate) too many sweets.

### Exercise (22)

# Which sentence means 'that Ali's residence in Amman is permanent'?

1. Ali lives in Amman. 2. Ali is living in Amman.

Exercise Change	e (23): the following affirmative sentences into negative
1	Jack lives in Barcelona.
2	. Hitler lived in Germany.
3	. Steve and Ross prefer pop music.
4	. Mrs. Obama has two daughters.
5	. We are close friends.

# 11. Derivation and order of nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs

"Checking my email is one of my habits. And today I received a message from one of my friends who lives in London. He sent me a profile about his city, London. It is a city of great contrasts. Crowded underground trains carry people from and to many places every day. The streets are busy. But you can easily find quiet park just around the corner where life seems unhurried. Everything would be completely different..."

**11.1 Word affixes**. Here are some affixes that are used to form a noun, a verb, an adjective and an adverb with examples:

**Verbs** fy (justify), ize (organize), ate (relate), en (strengthen

Nouns ness (sleeplessness), ity (popularity), ment

(development)

ing (running), sion (decision), tion (production), ture

(culture)

ade (lemonade), age (advantage), ance (significance),

ence (confidence), ism (professionalism), ian

(Jordanian), er (player)

or (actor), ist (typist) ship (friendship), ism (marxism),

hood (neighborhood)

**Adjectives** ed (developed), ing (exciting), ous (famous), ive

(impressive)

ful (helpful), ible (visible), able (reliable), ic

(forensic), ical (musical), ly (lovely), y (cloudy), en

(golden), some (handsome)

less (sleepless)

**adverbs** regular adverbs end in 'ly': (quickly, fantasticly);

there are some adverbs not ending in 'ly' (e.g. hard,

fast, well)

## 11.2 General guideline of where nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs usually come in the sentence.

- The noun is usually used as follows:
  - **a.** As a *subject* of a sentence, e.g.

**Visiting** relatives is a good thing to do

**b.** As an *object*, e.g.

I had good **expectations**.

**c.** After the *articles*, e.g.

*The* **improvement** of food quality is good for our health.

**d.** After the *adjectives*, e.g.

That's a *good* explanation.

**e.** After *determiners/ quantifiers* (this, these, few, some, no, etc), e.g.

This punishment is just fair.

**f.** After *possessives*, e.g.

His/Salim's loyalty was for a foreign country

g. After prepositions, e.g.

This exercise is perfect for **revision and meeting** your needs.

### • The verb is usually used:

**a.** After *modals*, e.g.

I can **rely** on you.

**b.** After to (to – infinitive), e.g.

I work to earn more money.

**c.** After (*do*) verbs-in questions and for emphasis, e.g.

Do you **drive** cars?

My companies do **produce** plastic pipes.

**d.** To form *imperatives*, e.g.

**Listen** to your teacher attentively.

- **e.** A verb of a sentence (after the subject)
- e.g. John **passed** the exam.

### • The Adjective:

**a.** An adjective describes a noun/ pronoun so it comes before the noun, as in:

I bought *expensive* clothes.

Adjective noun

('expensive' describes 'clothes')

### - Position of adjectives:

**a.** Before *nouns*, e.g.

He is a brave man.

**b.** In *comparatives* and *superlatives*, e.g.

Mary is *more* beautiful *than* Sue.

Mary is *the most* beautiful girl in town.

**c.** After *linking verbs* and (*be*) as a complement, e.g.

That building *looks* nice.

She is stunning.

**d.** After adverbs and some intensifiers (so, very, quite), e.g.

It is so <u>hot</u>.

He is very enthusiastic.

- An adverb describes a verb, and it can come before or after the verb as in:
  - We regularly meet the boss.

Adverb verb

('regularly' describes 'meet')

An adverb can also describe and come before an adjective/ or another adverb, as in:

- The weather is <u>really</u> <u>hot</u>. ('really' describes 'hot')

Adv. Adj.

- She crossed the road <u>very</u> <u>slowly</u>. ('very' describes 'slowly'). Adv Adv

**Note:** We usually form adverbs of manner by adding (ly) to the adjective, i.e. **adjectives+ ly**, as follows:

Interesting= interestingly; brave= bravely; happy= happily

**a.** When 'y' comes after a consonant in an adjective, you add 'ily', as in:

-easy = easily

Otherwise, you only add 'ly', as in "quick= quickly"

**b.** You don't omit 'e' from the adjective, as in:

- nice = nicely, except for: (true= truly, and whole= wholly)

### Position of adverbs

**a.** At the beginning of the sentence, e.g. Serien fell off her bike. <u>Consequently</u>, her arm was broken. Suddenly he hit his brother.

**b.** At the end of the sentence, e.g.

She moved slowly.

**c.** Before the verb, e.g.

Peter <u>regularly</u> meets his friend.

**d.** Before adjectives, e.g.

The show is <u>absolutely</u> great.

**e.** Before another adverb, e.g. Hala has worked really hard.

### The following is a list of common adjectives and adverbs:

<b>Adjectives</b>	<u>Adverbs</u>	<b>Adjectives</b>	<u>Adverbs</u>
happy	happily	fast	fast
strong	strongly	straight	straight
repeated	repeatedly	deep	deeply
real	really	low	low
absolute	absolutely	little	little
obvious	obviously	hard	hard
slow	slowly	friendly	friendly
beautiful	beautifully	daily	daily
regular	regularly	high	high/ highly
			(He jumped high. It's
			highly recommended.)

certain	certainly	late	late/ lately
			(He came late. He's
			been ill lately.)
loud	loudly	remarkable	remarkably
much	much	quick	quickly

### The following are derivations of common words:

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
care	care	careful	carefully
repeat	repetition	repeated	repeatedly
	happiness	happy	happily
	carelessness	careless	carelessly
confide	confidence	confident	confidently
perform	performance	performed	
differ	difference	different	differently
annoy	annoyance	annoying	annoyingly
deploy	deployment	deployed	
endanger	danger	dangerous	dangerously
act	action	active	actively
depend	dependence	dependent	dependently
attract	attraction	attractive	attractively
excite	excitement	exciting;	excitingly
		excited	
comprehend	comprehension	comprehensive	comprehensively
signify	significance	significant	significantly
strengthen	strength	strong	strongly
	fluency	fluent	fluently
educate	education	educational	educationally
vary	variety	various	variously
produce	production	productive	productively

### - Consider the following:

a. Using the dictionary entry below, choose the correct form of the word to fill in the blanks.

<sup>1.</sup> Nadia did .....well in the last English exam. She got 98%.

- 2. Sara's performance was..... Everyone loved her afterwards.
- 3. My brother's coming home tomorrow. Let's prepare something special that may...... him.

amaze (v): to astonish by making something special or new.
amazing (adj): to make others feel astonished.
amazingly(adv): to do something in a way that pleases others.
Answers: amazingly, amazing, amaze

### b. Choose the correct form of the word to fill in the blanks.

- 1. In your interview, make sure to leave a good .....in your examiners.
- 2. Nadia's performance was really ........
- 3. Ibrahim dresses like that to.....people.

impress (v): to make someone admire someone or something impression (n): idea, feeling and thought impressive (adj): remarkable, inspiring, etc.answers: impression, impressive, impress

### c. Choose the correct form of the word to fill in the blanks.

- 1. Sara is hard-working and can also ......other people.
- 2. Salam was definitly.....before acting on the stage. She was so thrilled.
- 3. Workers need...... to carry out their tasks.

motivate (v): to encourage someone to do somthingmotivation (n): encouragement, drive, etc.motivated (adj): being stimulated or encouraged to do somethinganswers: motivate, motivated, motivation

### 11.3 Parallel Structure

When information in a sentence is given in the form of a list all components must be grammatically parallel/ equal. If the first is, for example, a noun, the rest must also be nouns. Consider the following sentences:

a. John is <u>rich</u>, <u>clever</u> and <u>popular</u>. adj adj adj

b. John is a	doctor, a	ı <u>lawyer</u> and	d a <u>teacher</u> .		
	n	n	n		
c. The frien	ıdly troop	s approach	ed the camp <u>s</u>	ilently a	and <u>slowly</u> .
				adv	adv
d. She likes	swimmi	ng, fishing	and <u>running</u> .		
	n	n	n		

#### Exercise (24)

Use the following dictionary entry to fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

- (1) The project we have is very.....
- (2) The boss told me that it was so important to.... in the test.
- (3) What a great .....!

**Succeed** (v): have success, prosper

Success (n): accomplishment of what was aimed at

Successful (adj): prosperous

## Exercise (25)

Using the dictionary entry below, choose the correct form of the word to fill in the blanks.

**Advertisement** (n): public notice offering/ asking for good, services,....etc.

Advertise (v): to describe a product publicly

- (1) Henry decided to visit Petra after reading an .....about it.
- (2) It isn't cheap to .....on TV.

## Exercise (26)

Choose the correct word.

- 1. Please keep ...... (quiet/ quietly)
- 2. You should do it with ...... (care/ carefully)
- 3. You can ..... do the task. (easy/ easily)
- 4. His success is a ...... (certain/ certainty)
- 5. A cut causes an ......pain. (immediately/ immediate)

- 6. Ali ran so.....in the log race. (fast/ fasten)
- 7. Sami's show was ..... (wonderful/ wonderfully)
- 8. Suzan's project was .....planned. (perfect/ perfectly)

## Exercise (27)

- **A.** Identify the underlined word or phrase that is unacceptable in standard English in each sentence:
  - 1. The study of wild animals <u>are</u> interesting, and many books **have** been written about **them**.
  - 2. **Buying** clothes **are** a very time- consuming **practice**.
  - 3. I spent too many time checking the new files.
  - 4. Flat T.V  $\underline{is}$  too expensive for  $\underline{I}$  to buy  $\underline{these}$  days.
  - 5. After <u>to take</u> the vaccine, the old <u>man</u> became much better.
- B. Change the following sentences so that they are parallel.
  - 1. Melissa is a scholar, an athlete, and artistic.
  - 2. Children love playing in the mud, running in streets, and they get very dirty.

# 12. Subject-Verb Agreement

Dear Sami,

I'm writing to you to brief you on some strange facts of some sites in the world. Each of the following sites deserves your interest. And you've got to know that 10000 dollars is not too much to pay for a trip to any of them.

First of all I'm going to tell you about 'The Dead Sea'. *The facts* about this lake *are* enormous. It is the saltiest in the world. *The water is* about 400m below sea ...

The most common form of agreement in English language is that between subject and verb. The following are the main points that you should take into consideration:

- **a**. Singular nouns are usually accompanied by singular verbs, as in:
  - <u>Sam looks</u> better. sing n sing v
  - My car works properly.
- **b.** Plural nouns are usually accompanied by plural verbs, as in:
  - <u>They look</u> better. pl. n pl. v
  - The *employees are* working so hard.
  - The old women have arrived.
- **c.** When the noun can be either singular or plural, it takes a singular verb when regarding the people/items referred to by the noun as a group, as in:
  - (1) The *Committee is* changing the rules.The *family is* watching T.V.(The committee and the family are considered as one body)

(or it takes a plural verb) if the user is regarding the individuals, as in:

(2) The *committee are* changing the rules.

The *family are* watching T.V.

(The committee and the family's individuals/ member

(The committee and the family's individuals/ members are considered)

**d.** Two or more nouns acting as the subject connected by 'and', take a plural verb, as in:

'Dan and Robert are leaving tomorrow.'

- e. Indefinite pronouns such as, anyone, anything, anywhere, everyone, everybody, everything, nobody, nothing, and nowhere are singular; therefore, they are followed by singular verbs, for example:
  - Everyone is welcome.
  - Everybody has got a name.
  - *Is anyone* here? No, nobody is here.
- **f.** When the subject is singular separated from the verb by a number of plural names, its verb is in the singular, as in:

'A list of men's and women's names is ready to copy.'
'A list is singular noun separated by 'men's and women's names'- a number of plural names.

**g.** 'A number of+ plural noun' pattern takes plural verb, as in (a number of+ new roads):

'A number of new roads are under construction'.

**h.** '**The** number of+ plural noun' pattern takes singular verb, as in (The number of+ new roads):

'The number of new roads, that are under construction, is ten'.

i. 'None+ of the+ mass noun+ singular verb', as in:

'None of the money you gave me was found.'

'None+ of the+ plural count noun+ plural verb', as in:

'None of the students have finished the test yet.

j. The following expressions have no effect on the verb:together with along with accompanied by as well as As in:

- A boy as well as a girl is coming.
- A boy with two adults is coming.
- **k.** The noun preceded by (each, every) is singular, so the verb is singular, as in:
  - Each pilot is wearing a cap.
  - Every cadet deserves a medal.
- l. Names of books are singular and take singular verbs, as in:

  \*Romeo and Juliet was written by Shakespeare.

  \*Binoculars is written by A. S. Etaywe.
- **m.** A sum of money is singular, as in: *'Thirty dollars is* the salary you deserve.'
- **n.** In **not only...but also, either...or, neither...nor**, the verb agrees with the nearest subject, as in:
  - Either Josef or *his mates have* gone.
  - Either Ali or *his brothers* are studying.
  - Neither Sam's friends nor *he* is coming.
  - Not only my relatives but also **my friend, Ali, is** coming tonight.
  - **o.** 'All' takes a plural verb when followed by a plural countable noun, as in:

**All** the company men are to be considered for the new post.

**p.** Some nouns have a plural form and take a plural verb, as in: (clothes, belongings, goods, surroundings, troops, customs, remains, thanks, and congratulations), as in:

The *goods were* sent to Paris. Your *belongings are* packed up in boxes. The *troops have* forced the enemy to surrender.

- **q.** Some nouns have a plural form but take a singular verb, as in
  - Subjects: politics, statistics, physics, etc.
  - Activities: athletics, gymnastics, etc.
  - Illnesses: measles, numps, AIDS, etc.
  - Games: billiards, dominoes, etc.

#### As in:

Politics is an interesting field of study. Billiards is my favourite game. Measles is awful.

- r. A pair noun is plural and takes a plural verb. We use a pair noun for things made of two parts which are the same, as in: trousers, shorts, pants, binoculars and glasses. We say example, 'My trousers need washing'; 'These glasses are cheap'.
- **s.** If the subject and the verb are separated by a prepositional phrase, the prepositional phrase has no effect on the verb.

# Subject+ (Prepositional phrase)+ verb

- The study of languages is very interesting.
- **The view** *of these courses* **varies** from time to another.
- **The effects** of that crime are terrible.
- **The fear** *of money and power* **has caused** me to leave the country.
- **t.** If a sentence begins with a gerund (verb+ ing), the verb must be singular.
  - **Knowing** him **has** made me rich.
  - **Dieting is** important for athletes.
  - Writing letters is my favourite habit.

# Exercise (28)

Choose the correct form of the verb in brackets in the following sentences.

- 1. Hassan along with thirty friends (is/ are) planning a party.
- 2. The picture of the students (bring/ brings) back many memories.
- 3. If the duties of the commanders (isn't/ aren't) reduced, many of the subordinates will leave the service.
- 4. Advertisements on radios (is/ are) getting more competitive than a few years ago.
- 5. Non of the examples (is/ are) relative to this project.
- 6. Neither my relatives nor Hussein (is/ are) going to the country this weekend.
- 7. Neither Maria nor her friends (is/ are) bringing the car.

# 13. Pronouns and Nouns

"To some of my friends, it is important to exercise regularly. Although they know that some sports can be dangerous, they insist on playing them regularly. They consider playing football, for instance, a good way to keep themselves in a good shape regardless of its possible consequences if playing without any protective equipment..."

#### 13.1 Personal Pronouns

	(1)	(2)	(3)
	1st person	2 <sup>nd</sup> person	3 <sup>rd</sup> person
<u>Singular</u>			
Subject	I	you	he, she, it
Object	me	you	him, her, it
Possessive	my/mine	your/yours	his/his;her/hers;its/its
•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••
<u>Plural</u>			
Subject	we	you	they
Object	us	you	them
Possessive	our/ours	your/yours	their/theirs

- **a.** The subject forms are used when the pronoun is the subject and it has a verb, as in:
  - **She** is fine.
  - I like Ali.
  - **He** will go for a trip.
  - You have to take the wings off.
  - **We** must stick to the rules.
  - **They** are meeting their parents tonight.
- **b.** The object forms are used when the pronoun is the object of a verb or preposition, as in:

- I have met **her**.
- She has gone with **him**.
- Sue invited **me** to the party.
- I'll kill **you** if you don't give me the money I need.
- I invited **them** to the party.
- The police warned **us** to drive carefully.
- **c.** Possessive forms are used to indicate that something belongs to somebody or to imply the possession of something, as in:
  - I saw **my** bag.
- This bag is **mine**.
- **d.** The **first person pronouns** refer to the person who is speaking or writing. These include "I, me, my (self), mine, we, us, our (selves) and ours".
- **e.** The **second person pronouns** refer to the thing/ person to whom one is talking.
- **f.** The **third person pronouns** refer to a third party, not the speaker or the person/ thing being spoken to.

#### 13.2 Possessive Pronouns

Group A	Group B
Possessive adjectives	<b>Possessive pronouns</b>
my	mine
your	yours
his	his
her	hers
our	ours
their	theirs
its	its

# **Examples on possessive adjectives:**

- 1. Rania met *h*er daughter.
- 2. I saw *my* cat.
- 3. He forgot to bring *his* dictionary.

# **Examples on possessive pronouns:**

- 1. This house is *mine*.
- 2. That room is *hers*.
- 3. Can I borrow *yours*.

# Possessive adjectives modify nouns while Possessive pronouns replace nouns.

His dictionary= his+ dictionary (my= possessive adjective) Mine= my+ house (mine= possessive pronoun)

# **Consider the following:**

- This is my book.
  - This is mine.
- Our books are heavy.
  Ours are heavy.

# \*Reflexive Pronouns

Subject pronouns	Reflexive pronoun
------------------	-------------------

I	myself
you (singular)	yourself
he/ or singular masculine noun:	himself
(the man, Ali, etc.)	
she/ or singular feminine noun:	herself
(the lady, Asma, etc.)	
it	itself
we	ourselves
you (plural)	yourselves
they	themselves
one	oneself

# We use reflexive pronouns in the following situations:

- 1. When it refers to the subject.
  - *I* prepared the meal *myself*.

- 'Myself' refers to the subject 'I'.
- Hold the dagger firmly or *you* will hurt *yourself*. 'Yourself' refers to the subject 'You'.
- *Rana* is tall enough to catch the ball *herself*. 'Herself' refers to the subject 'Rana'.

# More examples:

- I hurt myself.
- You'll cut yourself.
- Khalil injured himself.
- Sumaia burnt herself.
- You two behave yourselves.
- Samir and Sue hurt themselves.

# 2. After prepositions.

- Sadeq is old enough to take care of himself.
- You know that you should look **after** *yourself*. Note: We use object pronouns (me, him, etc) after prepositions of place, e.g. behind, next to, and with.

## **3.** To refer to idiomatic meanings. As in:

- Last night my friends really *enjoyed themselves*. 'Enjoyed themselves' means **'had a good time'**.
- Your classmates should *behave themselves*. 'Behave themselves' means 'behave well'.
- I don't want to stay **by myself**.
  - 'by myself means: alone, on my own'.

# 4. Used as emphatic pronouns, as in:

- The brigadier general *welcomed me himself*. 'Welcomed me himself' means 'not someone else'. I *did the homework myself*. (It means 'without help')

**Note**: In 'Sue and Hayfa cook meals for **themselves** (Sue cooks meal for herself and Hayfa cooks for herself); but in 'Sue and Hayfa cook meals for **each other**' (Sue cooks meals for Hayfa and Hayfa cooks for Sue)

# 13.3 There + be

When 'there' is used, the subject follows 'be', and the subject determines the correct form of 'be' which you should use.

- a. Use a singular form of 'be' when the subject is singular, as in: There *is* a *table* over there. The subject is 'table' which is singular.
- b. Use a plural form of 'be' when the subject is plural, as in: 'There are some tables in that class. (The subject is 'tables')

# 13.4 Indefinite Pronouns

<b>Pronouns</b>	<u>Usage</u>	<b>Example</b>
somebody, someone	Used in affirmative sentences, and in questions when a yes- answer is expected.	-There is <i>somebody/ someone</i> sitting in the gardenA: I hear some voice inside. Is there someone in the house? B: Yes, she is my mother.
anybody, anyone	Used in negative sentences, and questions	There <i>isn't anybody/ anyone</i> at home. Is there <i>anyone?</i>
nobody, no one	Used after the answer 'No'	A: Is there anybody/ anyone here? B: No, there is <i>nobody/ no</i> one here.

# 14. The Nouns

# **14.1** Types of Nouns:

#### a. Abstract Nouns

An abstract noun is the name of a thing that is immaterial/cannot be touched but refers to a quality, concept or idea like: *anger*, *beauty*, *fear*, *ignorance*, *loyalty*, *pain*, *observation* and *comment*.

## b. Proper Nouns

Proper nouns are nouns with unique reference. They include:

- (1) Names of people like *Asma* and *Hassan*.
- (2) Names of places like *Hyde Park* and *Arizona*.
- (3) Names of countries like *Egypt* and *Qatar*.
- (4) Names of days, holidays and months like *Sunday*, *Christmas* and *February*.

#### c. Common Nouns

Common nouns name things or persons in a general way, e.g. *tree*, *city*, *manager*, *mother* and *student*.

# d. Collective Nouns

Collective nouns refer to a group of things or people. It can be treated as singular, when the whole group is being considered, or as plural when looking to the individuals. Examples include: *family, government, army, crew, staff, team, pride* of lions, *gaggle* of geese, *herd* of cattle, and *shoal* of herring.

# e. Compound Nouns

A compound noun is the noun that is made up of two words or more that function as a single part of speech.

A compound noun can be in many different patterns such as:

**Examples** 

**noun+ noun** football+ pitch = football pitch

sales+ man = salesman

grammar+ book = grammar

book

bicycle+ wheels = bicycle

wheels

medal+ parade = medal parade fitness+ test = fitness test tennis+ court = tennis court

**adjective+ noun** common+ sense = common

sense

physical+ training = physical

training

**gerund+ noun** sitting+ room = sitting room

dining+ hall = dining hall

**noun+ prepositional** mother+ in law = mother-in-law

**phrase** sister+ in law = sister- in- law

**possessive noun+ noun** women's+ talk = women's talk

men's+ toilet = men's toilet

**verb+ preposition** make+ up = make up

warm+ up = warm up

**verb+ adverb** cool+ down = cool down

break+ down= break down

# 14.2 Count and mass nouns

Nouns can be either countable (they've singular and plural forms and can be counted as in: *one book and two books; one table and* 

two tables; one child and two children, one woman and two women) or uncountable (things that are literally uncountable), for example: water, gas, love, traffic, pollution, and air or things that are extremely difficult to count, e.g. sugar, hair, salt, rice, and sand).

## Mass nouns include:

- **a.** Abstract nouns, as in: 'courage', 'innocence', 'beauty', evidence', 'proof', 'time' 'information', 'energy', 'vocabulary', 'fun', 'knowledge', 'advice', 'luck', 'health' and 'grammar'.
- **b.** Liquids, e.g. tea, blood, water, and milk.
- **c.** Materials which consist of particles, e.g. sugar, flour, sand, dust, corn, dirt, salt, pepper, and wheat.
- **d.** Weather and natural phenomena, as in (ice, snow, rain, hail, fog, heat, cold, gravity, humidity, lightening, wind, sleet, thunder, and fire).
- **e.** Languages: English, Spanish, Arabic, etc.
- **f.** Recreation: soccer, tennis, chess, etc.
- **g.** Gase, as in: air, oxygen, smog, pollution, etc.
- **h.** Groups made of similar items, e.g. baggage, luggage, furniture, meet, food, fruit, hardware, software, mail, money, change and traffic.
- i. Miscellaneous: gold, silver, iron, paper, wood, bread, cotton, news, homework, work, traffic, laughter, scenery accommodation, and travel.

## 14.3 Singular and Plural Nouns

A plural noun is a noun that refers to more than one thing. Singular nouns refer to one thing and they form plural forms in different ways:

**a.** Most singular nouns add 's', as in:

Singular	Plural
bat	bats
table	tables
pen	pens

And they add 'es' to singular nouns ending in (x,ch,sh,s,ss), as in:

Singular	Plural
church	churches
box	boxes

- **b.** Singular nouns ending in a consonant followed by 'y' add 'ies' as in: story/ stories, baby/ babies, lady/ ladies. If (y) is preceded by a vowel, you only add (s). Examples include: (key= keys, day= days, and boy= boys).
- **c.** Some nouns are already in the plural form as in: ('scissors', 'trousers', 'police', 'pants', etc).
- **d.** Some plural forms are *different in form* from the singular forms and don't simply add an ending. Examples:

Singular	Plural
man	men
woman	women
mouse	mice
louse	lice

**e.** Some irregular plurals are formed by *changing the vowel* of the singular forms.

Singular	Plural
foot	feet
goose	geese
tooth	teeth

**f.** Some irregular plural forms are formed by *adding* – *'en/ren'*. Examples:

'oxen' from 'ox'

and 'children' from 'child'.

**g.** Some irregular plurals forms are *originally Latin* plural forms.

Singular	Plural
stimulus	stimuli
phenomenon	phenomena
criterion	criteria
larva	larvae
formula	formulae
index	indices/ indexes

- **h.** Some nouns have *the same form* for the singular and the plural. (*sheep, salmon, deer* and *fish*).
- i. Some nouns ending in '-f' or 'fe' form plurals in'-ves'.

# **Examples:**

Singular	Plural
loaf	loaves
half	halves
wife	wives
thief	thieves

But, the following names do not follow the same pattern:

Singular	Plural
handkerchief	handkerchiefs
chief	chiefs
dwarf	dwarfs
roof	roofs
safe	safes
gulf	gulfs

**j.** Compound nouns: In two-word nouns we pluralize the last word. **Examples:** 'travel agent'= 'travel agents',

'football pitch'= 'football pitches',
'basketball net'= 'basketball nets',
'tennis racket'= 'tennis rackets',
'basketball bat'= 'basketball bats',
'tennis court'= 'tennis courts'.
- In three-word nouns we pluralize the first word, as in: 'brother-in-law'= 'brothers-in-law',
'mother-in-law'= mothers- in-law'.

**k.** If the singular noun ends in (o) preceded by a vowel, you add (s) to the noun to become plural, as in:

radio= radios,

zoo = zoos.

If the noun ends in (o) preceded by a consonant we usually add (es), but not always. **Examples**:

cargo= cargoes (or cargos),commando= commandoes (or commandos),

hero= heroes, negro= negroes, potato= potatoes, tomato= tomatoes,

volcano= volcanoes, motto= mottos (or mottoes), zero= zeroes,

mosquito= mosquitoes (or mosquitos).

The following words take only (s): casino= *casinos*, piano= *pianos*, kilo= *kilos*, photo= *photos* and rhino= *rhinos*.

# **l.** Some nouns ending in 'is' form plurals in 'es. Examples:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
crisis	crises
axis	axes
basis	bases
thesis	theses

- **m.** We can't use 'a' or a number before a mass/ uncountable noun. We can't say 'a petrol' or 'two rice'. However, we can use a/number+ count noun+ of+ mass noun, as follows:
- A cup of tea
- Two cups of tea

tea	a cup of tea	lemon	a slice of lemon
water	a glass of water	bread	a loaf of bread
chips	a bag of chips	chocolate	a bar of chocolate
paper	a sheet of paper	tooth paste	a tube of tooth paste
rice	a kilo of rice	jam	a jar of jam
coke	a can of coke	soup	a tin of soup
cheese	a piece of cheese	ice cream	a scoop of ice cream
biscuits	a packet of biscuits	lettuce	a head of lettuce

## 14.4 Possessive Nouns

We use possessive nouns to show possession. We use the following techniques to imply how things belong to people/ or things:

**a.** Add an apostrophe (') and (-s) as follows ('s) to a singular noun, as in:

Noun	Possessive noun	Examples
boy	boy's	This is the boy's ball.
girl	girl's	That is the little girl's bag.
husband	husband's	My husband's house is in Amman.

If a singular noun ends in (s), you can either add ('s), or add only an apostrophe ('), as in:

Noun	Possessive noun	Examples
Thomas	Thomas's/	'Thomas's house is spectacular', or
	Thomas'	'Thomas' house is spectacular'.

**b.** Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun which ends in (s), for example:

Noun	Possessive noun	Examples
boys	boys'	The <i>boys' school</i> is over there.
wives	wives'	The wives' ball is blue.
husbands	husbands'	The <i>husbands' best perfume</i> is
		Dunhill'.

# c. Add an ('s) to plural nouns that don't end in (s), for example:

Noun	Possessive noun	Examples		
women	women's	Those are the women's shirts.		
men	men's	These are the men's neck ties.		

#### Exercise (29)

**A:** Circle the correct form of pronoun or possessive adjective to complete the following sentences.

- 1. (I, my, myself).... will visit Abdurrahman tomorrow.
- 2. They called.... (we, us, our) on the phone.
- 3. Johnson told.... (herself, she, her) a story.
- 4. Alfred will make his presentation after....(his, him, he) finishes his exercise.
- 5. Mugabe is eating ..... (himself, him, he, his) dinner.
- 6. ....(My, Mine, Me) sitting room is freezing.
- 7. I go to the school with .....(he, him, himself) every day.
- 8. She speaks to....(we, us) every day.
- 9. I hurt .....(my, mine) le.g.
- 10. John ....(he, himself) went to the meeting.
- 11. Hussein and....(my, me, I) would go to Essex.
- 12.....(Her, Hers) car didn't go as fast as .....(our, ours)

B: Which of the following nouns are countable or mass nouns? television car news furniture person water tooth money minute cup information economics

Countable nouns	Mass nouns

# 15. Premodifiers: Quantifiers, Demonstrative Pronouns and Articles

# A lecturer says....

Do you know what will happen if *all* icebergs melt? *Some* of the reports show that *the* Earth is getting really warmer. This will make *the* icebergs melt; and then the water level will rise. This rise will have *a* dramatic effect on coastal towns. *Too much* pollution will be there and *a large number of* species will disappear...

# 15.1 Quantifiers

Some phrases of quantities are used with countable nouns while others are only used with mass nouns. However, there are some of them you can use with both mass and countable nouns. The table below shows quantifiers.

With Plural Countable Nouns	With Mass/uncountable Nouns	With Countable/Mass Nouns'
many, few, a few, a	a great deal of, little,	a lot of, lots of,
large number of, a	a little, much, too	plenty of, some,
great number of, too	much, a large amount	enough, any, no, all,
many, several,	of, lessthan	none
fewerthan, (one,		
two, three, etc.)		

## **Examples:**

- 1. *Many people* supported the principal.
- 2. *A few dictionaries* are necessary for English language learners.
- 3. A large number of car accidents take place every year.

- 4. *Too many bikes* are used nowadays on London's streets.
- 5. Several topics are to be discussed in today's conference.
- 6. You should keep in touch with a few of your friends.
- 7. You have to provide me with *a great deal of information* about Ali in five days.
- 8. I have *little coffee* left. I'm afraid the amount is not enough to prepare a cup for each of you.
- 9. The cake is not so sweet. I think you didn't add *too much sugar* to the mix.
- 10. I saw *a lot of children* gathering outside the UN building.
- 11. I stored *a lot of food* in the grand store.
- 12. Do you have *enough rice* for tonight's party?
- 13. Are there *enough people* to vote for the decision?
- 14. Can you give me *some advice* before I begin the tournament?
- 15. Do you have any coffee? I have no coffee.
- 16. Do you have *any* pens? I have *no* pens.

# 15.1.1 Using 'few', 'a few', 'little' and 'a little'.

- **Note:** 'few' and 'a few' are used with countable nouns; 'little' and 'a little' are used with mass nouns.
- **a.** 'few' and 'little' give a negative idea of something or something is largely absent, for example:
  - Ali has *few friends* because he has a lot of problems with people.
  - Ali has *little information* about the thief. That is why he couldn't find him.
- **b.** 'a few' and 'a little' give a positive idea of something, for example:
  - A few students answered the questions due to the lecturer's clear explanation of the book.

- Let me give you a little advice. I think you can use my Laptop.
- 'Few' means 'not many', whereas 'little' means 'not much'.

# 15.1.2 'Too' and 'Enough'

'Too' precedes an adjective- and we usually use infinitives with 'to'- to imply a negative result or **more than the right amount**, as in:

- The box is *too heavy* for me <u>to carry</u>. (This means that it is impossible for me to carry that box)

**'Enough'** follows an adjective, and it precedes a noun. It means the **right amount**, as in:

Jim is *brave enough* to talk to his boss.

Adjective

The president has *enough* <u>courage</u> to wage a war

Noun

# **15.2** Demonstrative Pronouns

A demonstrative pronoun is used to indicate things or people in relationship to the speaker/ writer in space or time. The following table shows how we use (this, these, that, and those).

<b>Pronouns This</b>	Position It comes before singular nouns (it indicates nearness)	Examples Take this book.
These	It comes before plural nouns (it indicates nearness)	These flowers are yours.
That	It comes before singular nouns (it refers to distant thing/ person)	That is my brother.

**Those**It comes before plural
nouns (it refers to far mine.
people/ things)

This and that are used with both countable and mass nouns. These and those are used only with countable nouns.

- This/ That boy is handsome. ( $\sqrt{ }$ )
- This/ That rice is delicious. ( $\sqrt{}$ )
- These/ Those boys are kind. ( $\sqrt{}$ )
- These/ Those rice are delicious. (x)
- This/ That rice is delicious. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

#### 15.3 Articles

## 15.3.1 Definite Article

Definite article is a term for 'the' which is used before nouns, as follows:

- **a.** Before names of a thing that has already been mentioned, As in:
  - 'Jack built a model. The model was of a plane'.
- **b.** To make a general statement about all things of a particular type, as in:
  - 'The car has caused damage to the environment'. (which means all cars)
- c. Before a name of a whole group, as in: 'The younger generations', 'the disabled' and 'The rich should donate to poor elderly people'.
- **d.** Before a name that refers to services or systems, as in 'They are on *the phone'*.
- **e.** Before a person/ or thing which is the only one of its kind (unique), as in:

'the Bible', 'the White House', 'the president of the USA', 'the sun', and 'the Earth'.

The sun sets in the west.

The earth is not straight.

**f.** In front of superlative adjectives, as in:

'the largest building', 'the most beautiful woman'.

- **g.** Instead of a possessive determiner to refer to parts of the body: 'She took him by *the arm'*.
- **h.** Before the names of kingdoms, states, republics and unions, as in:

'The USA', 'The UK', 'The Soviet Union', 'The Republic of Ireland', etc.

- i. With the nationality to mean the people of a country, as in: *The British are so punctual*.
- j. Before the names of oceans, rivers, seas and canals, as in 'the Red Sea', 'the Nile', the Suez canal, the Pacific ocean'.
- **k.** Before the directions (the west, the east, etc.).
- **l.** With the plural names of countries, as in 'The Philippines'.
- **m.** With mountain ranges, as in 'The Alps'.
- **n.** With groups of islands, as in' The Canaries'.
- **o.** With names of musical instruments (the piano, the violin).
- **p.** With the main parts of the day:

# in the morning, in the evening, and in the afternoon.

- **q.** To indicate something that we know about as in: 'The boy in *the corner is my brother*.'
- **r.** With schools, colleges, and universities when the phrase begins with (school, college, university), as in:
  - I'm teaching at the University of Jordan.
  - The University of Exeter is universally admired.
- **s.** With ordinal numbers (first, second, third) as in: the first world war, the second chapter.

#### Note: We do not use 'the' with:

- 1. With titles, as in: Mr., Mrs., and Doctor/Dr.
- 2. Before names of meals that aren't preceded by adjectives (dinner, breakfast, etc.).
- 3. Individual mountains, as in (Everest).

- 4. Continents, as in (Europe, Asia, Africa).
- 5. Cities and states, (Amman, Cairo, Florida).
- 6. Countries with only one word (France, Jordan).
- 7. Means of transport (bus, train).
- 8. Time of day/night (at night, at dawn, at noon).
- 9. Sports (baseball, basketball).
- 10. Fields of study, or areas of subject matter as in mathematics.
- 11. With holidays as in: Christmas, Thanksgiving.
- \* With uncountable nouns you use the article "the" if speaking is in specific terms, but use "no article" if speaking is in general as in:
  - 1. Honey is sweet. (general- all honey)
  - 2. The honey on the table is from Yemen. (specific- that is on the table)
- \* Plural nouns are not preceded by "the" when they mean everything within a certain class, as in:
- Oranges are green until they are ripe. (all oranges)
- \* We don't use "the" with schools, colleges, and universities when the phrase begins with a proper noun as in:
- George University.
- Bin Khaldoon College.
- Exeter University.

# **15.3.2** Indefinite Articles ('a' and 'an')

(A):

- **a.** The form 'a' is used before words which begin with a consonant sound, as (a box, a road, a book).
- **b.** A' is used before singular countable nouns not mentioned before, as in:

'There are seven men and a lady in the house.'

'I saw *a girl* in the street.' (We don't know which girl)

- **c.** 'A' can be used with words of quantity: a few, a lot of, a good deal of.
- **d.** 'A' can be used in exclamation, as in 'what a great idea!'.
- **e.** 'A' can be used instead of 'per', as in 'I have two tests a week'.
- **f.** 'A' is used with a noun complement, as in 'Jessica is a teacher', and 'Simpson is a doctor'.

(An): The form 'an' is used before words that begin with a vowel sound, as in 'an apple', 'an ostrich', 'an hour', 'an honest man'.

-The following words begin with a consonant sound and thus must be preceded by 'a':

a home a European a half a house a heavy a union a uniform a university a universal

-The following words begin with a vowel sound and thus must be preceded by 'an':

an hour an hier an herbal an honor an uncle an umbrella an understanding an unnatural

## Note: We don't use a/an:

- Before plural nouns, e.g. boys not a boys.
- Before uncountable nouns, e.g. news, furniture, wood, stone, and beauty.
- With meals, unless preceded by adjectives,
  - You should have your dinner.
  - I had a good dinner.

Exercise (30	))			
Choose (a), (	(b), or (c) to co	implete the following	ser	ntences.
1.	I feel sorry fo	or her. She has	frie	nds.
	a. little	b. much	c.	few
2.	I have a	apple trees.		
	a. a lot of	b. too much	c.	a great deal of
3.	The ho	use is there.		
	a. boie's	b. boys'	c.	boys's
4.	The coa	ich is that one.		
	a. mens'	b. men's	c.	mans'
5.	Aseel met thr	ee		
	a. childs	b. children	c.	childrens
6.	Tonight I'm g	going to tell you two	shoi	rt
	a. stories		c.	storieis
7.	I sold five	of bread.		
	a. loafs	b. loaves	c.	loves
8.	Alzarqa city l	nas air pollution	1.	
	a. too much	b. too many	c.	a few
9.	He was lucky	to haveknowle	edge	e about the issue.
	a. enough	b. a few	c.	a little
10.	Politics	not good to study.		
	a. is	b. are	c.	have
11.	Let me give y	ouadvice.		
	a. an	b. some		few
12.	There seemed	d to be a lot ofo	n th	e road.
	a. traffic	b. traffics	c.	trafficing
13.	My parents 1	eft me alone at hor	ne.	So that I had to
make	a sandwich	• • • • •		

# Exercise (31)

Select the correct answer.

1. Nadia	usually	takes	 apple	before	she	goes	to	her
office.								

a.an b.a c.the d.x

a. my b. myself c. mine

2. I saw a girl w	ith a dog	. girl was very b	eautiful.
a.the	c. an	b. a	d. x
3. What nic	ce car!		
a. a	b. an	c. the	d. x
4. Sue had	. dinner with he	er brother.	
a. a	b. an	c. the	d. x
5. I can see man	y planes in	sky.	
	b. an		d. x
6. Anna is	most beautiful	l girl I've ever se	een.
a. a	b. an	c. the	d. x
7. I hate ri	ch.		
a. a	b. the	c. an	d. x
8 house lo	ooks awful.		
a. These	b. Those	c. This	d. theese
9 are my	chairs.		
a. This	b. That	c. These	d. thats
10. There is	sitting by the	e lake.	
a.	b. anybody	c.	d.
somebody		nowhere s	omewhere
11. A: Is Rakar	n coming to the	party?	
B: I think so	o, I've invited.	•••••	
a. he	b. him	c. his	d. she
12. You and I	work well to	getheraı	re an excellent
team.			
a. We	b. Our	c. Us	d. Your
13. On our trip	toSpain, we	e crossedA	Atlantic Ocean.
a. a/an	b. an/the	c. x/the	d. x/x
14. Rita plays	violin and l	ner sister plays .	guitar.
a. a/the	b. an/a	c. the/the	d. x/x
15. Kazim attend	ded Prince	eton University.	
a. a	b. an	c. the	d. x
16. Henry was admitted toSchool of Medicine.			
•		c. the	

#### Exercise (32)

Supply (a, an, the, or nothing) in gabs.

- 1. Ali crossed...... Mississippi.
- 2. Mount Rum is one of...... highest mountains in Jordan.
- 3. ..... Alps lies in..... Europe.
- 4. The shepard gave me .....animal.
- 5. You need ......pen and ......exercise book to practice well.
- 6. .....million people received my text message at Christmas Eve.
- 7. .....few people were fortunate to escape the fire.
- 8. French is ...... easy language to learn.
- 9. My father is..... honorable man.
- 10. .....gold is very precious metal.

### Exercise (33)

Make sentences by putting the following words in the correct order.

- 1. old/ sick/ was/ the/ man .....
- 2. my/ finished/ ago/ I/ task/ years/ three .....
- 3. parents/ have/ into/ my/ apartment/ a/ new/ moved...
- 4. Alia/ well/ English/ speaks ......
- 5. you/tell/I/did/job/about/the/new? .....
- 6. met/ few/ I/ a/ people/ school/ in/ the.....
- 7. better/ is/ cure/ than/ prevention ......

#### Exercise (34)

Choose the correct reflexive pronoun, possessive adjectives or possessive pronoun.

- 1. Mary hurt (himself/ yourself/ herself).
- 2. We helped the old woman (himself/ ourselves/ themselves).
- 3. Did you see Alison (himself/ yourself/ themselves)?
- 4. Alia's coat is red; (my/ mine) is brown.
- 5. Lucy is preparing (hers/ her) clothes.
- 6. Is that (your/ yours/ yourself) motor cycle?

# 16. Modal Verbs

Steve: Can I visit you during the vacation?

Mike: No, I'm afraid. I'll be out of the town for some

business over that period.

Steve: But I need be in touch with you all the time.

Mike: Well, you don't have to worry about this issue as long

as you have an access to Internet. (...)

# 16.1 Modals and Uses

Remember that modals must be followed by the base form of a verb. The following table shows the modals and their uses:

Auxiliary	Uses	Examples
	(1) polite request	A: <i>May</i> I <i>use</i> your car?
		B: Yes, certainly.
	(2) formal permission	You <i>may leave</i> the office.
May	(3) 50% certaint	Where's Timor?
	"possibility/probability	He <i>may</i> be at the library.
	expressed in <i>may</i> is	('may' gives the meaning of being
	slightly higher than in	slightly more certain than what 'might'
	might"	does)
	(1) less than 50%	-Where's Timor?
	certainty	He <i>might</i> be at the library.
	" <i>migh</i> is less dfinite or	-Pigs <i>might</i> fly.
N. 1.4	more hesitant form of	
Might	may- suggesting a	
	smaller chance"	
	(2) polite request	Might I borrow your pencil?
		Yes, of course.
Should	(1) advisability	You <i>should see</i> the dentist.
		Your gum is bleeding.

	(2) 90 % certainty	She <i>should</i> do well in the final exam. She studied so hard. (future)
	(3) internal motive to do something- personal	I <i>should</i> study hard tonight as I have exam tomorrow.
	(1) advisability	You <i>ought to study</i> hard.
Ought to	(2) 90 % certainty	She <i>ought to do</i> well on the test.( future)
	(3) external motive to do something- impersonal	I <i>ought to</i> study tonight. I'm really fed up of studying.
Must	(1) strong obligation	I <b>must</b> leave tonight by 7 o'clock.
Must	(2) prohibition (negative)	You <i>must not disobey</i> your father.
	(3) certain/ or strong deduction	Fredrick isn't at school. He never misses a class. He <i>must</i> be sick.
	(4) external obligation (by the law, etc)	In hospitals you <i>must</i> switch your phone off.
	(1) to express intention	He <i>will do</i> all his work himself. (future only)
	(2) willingness	The phone's ringing. I'll answer it.
Will	(3) decision or offer made at this moment	- I'm bored. I'll go out.
	(4) polite request	Will you please close the door?
	(5) for prediction	It will rain tomorrow.
	(6) to express promise	I'll see you tomorrow.
Shall	(1) polite question to make a suggestion	Shall I open the store?

Can	(1) ability/ inability/ possibility	- I can('t) jump high/ I can wait for a while. (ability/ inability) - Computers can crash. (possibility) ('can' is more general than 'may' and 'might'/ theoretical possibility)
	(2) informal permission	You <i>can use</i> my computer tonight.
	(3) informal polite request	A: <i>Can</i> I <i>use</i> your car? B: Sure.
	(4) impossibility (negative only)	Your plan <i>can't</i> be valid.
	(1) past ability	I <i>could run</i> ten miles a day when I was young.
	(2) polite request	Could I use your phone? Could you support me? Yes, of course.
Could	(3) suggestion	A: I need help in IELTS. B:You <i>could talk</i> to your teacher.
	(4) less than 50% certainty/ possibility or probability	Where's Sal? She <i>could</i> be at home.
	(5) impossibility (in negative only)	That plan <i>couldn't</i> be valid.
	(1) polite request	Would you please keep me posted? Yes, I'd be glad to.
Would	(2) preference	I would rather join the navy than stay unemployed.
	(2) Past custom	When I needed fish, I would go fishing in Aqaba

	polite request	A: Would you mind if I paint the
		bedroom?
Would you		B: No, not at all
mind		A: Would you mind painting the
		sitting room?
		B: No, of course not
	to mean 'have the	-I dare not speak loudly.
Dare	courage'	-Dare you talk to Rashid?
	to mean 'necessitate,	- I need not speak to Sam.
Need	require, should, and want'	- Need I speak to Sam?

# \* Prohibition and lack of necessity (must / have to):

Must not	<ul><li>You must not smoke in the office.</li><li>You must not kill wild animals.</li></ul>	<ul> <li>It is <u>prohibited</u> to smoke in the office.</li> <li>killing wild animal is <u>unlawful</u>.</li> </ul>
Not have to (not modal)	- You <i>don't have to</i> leave home these days.	- It is <b>not necessary</b> for you to leave home these days.

# **16.2** Degrees of Certainty

You can use modals to express how certain you are about something. The following tables show the degree of certainty that some modals convey.

# - Present positive:

Why is Ali absent?

**Modals Degree of Certainty Examples** 

May be, might be, - less than 50 % sure - He may/ might be/ could

**could be** (weak degree of certainty) be sick.

Must be - almost sure - He must be sick.

(strong degree of certainty)

\* in this case we know that Ali is a good student. He usually attends the lessons. He wasn't feeling good over the last two days.

Be (is, are) (not modals)

- 100 % sure He is sick.

## **Present negative:**

## Why isn't Ali drinking water?

Modals	Degree of Certainty	Examples
May not be, might not be	- less than 50 % sure (to mention possibilities)	- He may/ might not be thirsty. Maybe he doesn't see the water bottle. Or perhaps, he drank earlier.
Must not be	- 95% sure	- He mustn't be thirsty.
Can't be/ couldn't be	- sure	- He can't/ couldn't be thirsty. That is <b>impossible</b> . I just saw him drinking water.

## **Consider the following examples:**

- 1. Sami looks depressed. He *must* be having some problems.
- 2. This man looks like a businessman. He *may* work for a private company.
- 3. Suha's clothes are very expensive. She *must* be earning a lot of money.
- 4. I am sure she is relaxing in her house. Yes, she *must* be relaxing.
- 5. She always goes abroad. She *might* be working for the ministry of foreign affairs.

- Past positive Why was Ali absent?

Modals	Degree of certainty/ past time	Examples
May/might/could have been	- less than 50% sure	- He may/ might/ could have been sick.
Must have been	- sure	- He must have been sick.
Was, were (not modals)	- 100% sure	- He was sick.

## **16.3** Past forms of modals:

Modals	Past forms	Remarks/ Examples
Should	Should have+ p.p	Used for late advice; to express lost opportunity and criticism - Ali should have gone to the meeting.
Ought to	Ought to have+ p.p	For late advice - Ali ought to have gone to the meeting.
Can	Could	- I could lift that heavy box.
Could	Could have+ p.p	To express that something was possible to happen - Musa could have gone to school You could have asked

her to help you.

May/ might May/ might have+ p.p For something

probably/ possibly

happened

- Mosa may have gone

to school.

early.

Must had to - Sam had to leave

must have+ p.p (for strong deduction about something in the past)

- Sam didn't eat last night. He must have been hungry when he

arrived at his friends

house this evening.

## **Consider the following examples:**

- 1. Sue *may/might/could have lied* to me about the treasure. (Maybe Sue lied to me about the treasure)
- 2. My father is telling Basim off. He *may/might/could have come* home after midnight.

#### 16.4 Probability

You can use the following ways to express probability:

- 1. Using (can, could, may, might, must.
  - For example:
    - Britney sings beautifully. She **could** be a great singer.
    - Sonia speaks French fluently. She **may** be French.
    - Michelle looks stunning. She **might** win the celebrity prize.
    - Asma speaks Arabic well. She **must** be living in an Arabic speaking country.
- **2.** Using the introducing statements:
- (it is+ likely/ unlikely/ probable/ improbable/ possible/ impossible/ definite+ that clause), e.g.
  - It is likely that it rains today.

- It is possible that he becomes a brigadier. Things happen.
- It is probable that he is waiting for her at the roundabout.
- 3. Using adverbs such as: possibly, probably, and definitely.
  - The enemy forces *possibly* surrender.
  - That little girl *definitely* lives in Oslo.
  - She is *possibly* a French singer.

## 16.5 Would rather/ prefer

'Would rather' means the same as 'prefer'. However, 'would rather' must be followed by a verb, whereas 'prefer' may/ may not be followed be a verb.

- Suha would rather eat apples than carrots.
- Suha prefers eating apples to eating carrots.
- Suha **prefers** apples **to** carrots.

# 16.6 had better, be supposed to, be to, have to, have got to, be going to, be able to, and used to.

	Uses	Examples
Had better	To mean advisability with threat of bad result	You <i>had better get</i> dressed a bit early, or we will leave without you.
Be supposed to	For expectation	The session <i>is supposed to</i> begin at 17:00 hrs.
Be to	For formal order	You <i>are to attend</i> the meeting at 13:00 hrs.
Have to	To express the necessity	I have to leave Paris tonight.
	lack of necessity (in negative)	I <i>don't have to visit</i> Jordan this summer.
Have got to	For necessity	I have got to meet her today.

Be going to	For planned, and pre- intended action/ or with future results of a present situation	I'm going to build a new house. (future only)
Be able to	To express the ability	She is able to help Rami.
Used to=	To refer to repeated action	I used to smoke cigarettes when
accustomed to	in the past.	I was a child.

	Past forms	Examples
Be supposed	Was/ were supposed to	-I was supposed to join
to		you.
Be to	Was/ were to	-He was to listen
		carefully.
Has to/ have	Had to	-I <i>had to run</i> fast to
to		catch the train.
Have got to	Had got to	-I <i>had got to run</i> fast to
		catch the train.
Be going to	Was/ were going to	-She was going to kill
		her husband.
Would rather	Would rather+ have+ p.p	- I <b>would rather</b> have
	(contrary to the fact)	prepared myself for the
		party.

#### Exercise (35)

Correct the underlined errors to give the right form in the following sentences:

- 1. Jima can to dance perfectly.
- 2. Rose wills join us today.
- 3. Rashid should had played better.
- 4. May Fatima to play well?
- 5. <u>I'm able jump higher than the Kangaroo.</u>

#### Exercise (36)

Rewrite the following sentences, so that the new sentences give the same meaning -probability. (You can do that in different ways)

- 1. Beethoven may be English.
  - It is possible that Beethoven is English.

Or - Beethoven is possibly English.

2. Mills will probably leave this summer.

3. It is likely that Rashid flies tomorrow morning.

- .....

#### Exercise (37)

A: Choose the meaning of the underlined verbs/ phrases in the following sentences:

- 1. I **could** climb mountains when I was young.
- a. Ability
- b. Request
- c. Will
- 2. She **should** have called me.
- a. Ought to
- b. Have to
- c. Could
- 3. I <u>can</u> penetrate the international borders easily.
- a. Be able to b.
- b. Should
- c. Had better
- 4. **Would you mind** calling me after midnight?
- a. Ability
- b. Request
- c. Obligation
- 5. You **mustn't** drive when you have had a drink.
- a. Necessity
- b. Advisability
- c. Prohibition
- 6. You **don't have to** work till midnight.
- a. Necessity
- b. Lack of necessity c. Prohibition

- 7. **I have to** study tonight.
  - a. Internal obligation b. External obligation c. advisability
- 8. Sali **could** be thinking about her test.
  - a. It is probable that she is thinking about her test.
  - b. I am sure she is tinking about her test.

## **B:** Select the appropriate answer:

- John didn't study at all. And he sat for a test today. You know, the test was very difficult. He
(can have failed, must have failed, should have failed)

# 17. Phrasal Verbs (Verb+ particle: preposition/ adverb)

A phrasal verb is a simple verb combines with a preposition, as in 'call up', with adverb, as in 'go forward' or with both as in 'look forward to'. Some phrasal verbs are intransitive, as in 'get ahead' in "She will get a head", and 'blow up' which means 'suddenly become very angry', as in 'When I told jerry the solid proof, he blew up', while others are transitive, as in 'get back'.

- I will **get** my car **back**.
- She will get a head.

The transitive phrasal verbs are classified into separable and non-separable phrasal verbs.

17.1 Separable phrasal verbs: With separable phrasal verbs a noun may come between the verb and the particle or after the particle, whereas the pronoun comes only between the verb and the particle. If the object is short, it can come between the verb and the particle. The short object is made of two words or less.

If the object of the separable phrasal verbs is long, the object will come only after the phrasal verb, as in 'I can get back many of my objects.' 'Many of my objects' isn't short to come between the verb and the particle.

#### **Examples:**

- We will *get it back*.
- My teacher gave me a few hints. I need to write them down

before I forget.

- I wrote the number down. (short object)
- (or) I wrote down the number.
- Put your hands up. (or) Put up your hands.
- I can't *get back* any of my objects. (long object)

- I'll try on the dress in that room. (long object)
- I'll carry out a number of physical exercises. (long object)
- We will get our car back. (Or) We will get back our car.

**17.2 Non-separable phrasal verbs** with which a noun or a pronoun must follow the particle, as in *'feel over'* in 'He *felt over* the rocks'.

## 17.3 The following is a list of separable phrasal verbs:

call up	hand in	hold back	set back
make out	put off	write down	break down
get back	get down	bring back	set out
get over	pass on	back up (confirm fact)	switch off
figure out	count in	bring down	cut down
cut off	cut out	leave out	blow up
let in	get out	turn on	mix up
make up	put up	break up	throw away
turn down	ring up	bring up	carry out
run down	Set up	cross out	hand over
turn over	Do over	turn off	try on
let out	look over		

## The following is a list of inseparable phrasal verbs:

get away	get by	get in	get over
get together	come up with	fall out	care about
call for	hang up	cut down	send for
get up	pull in	pull out	clear up
look after	look for	look through	look forward to
hang about go on	hold on go out	call in go down	stick to give in
brush up on (review)	bone up on (review)	get off	get on

## 15.3.1 Phrasal verbs with (up) and their meaning.

ring up= phone

give up= stop doing something

back up= make a copy of something

set up= establish

bring up= start to talk about something

speak up= speak more loudly

eat up= eat all the food

make up= invent hold up= delay

turn up= arrive

Exercise (38)
Select the correct answer.
1. The King Abdullah canal
a. holds 30 cubic meters of water back.
b. holds back 30 cubic meters of water.
2. Janet smokes a lot. She should
(give it up/ give up it)
3. I think I'llmy coatIt is too hot here.
(turn on/ take off)
4. I willover there.
c. put up the picture you bought to me
d. put the picture you bought to me up
or but me breake you cought to me up
5. Those two words are so similar. They
a. mix me up.
b. mix up me.
o. mix up me.
6. You need to
a. look after your child.
b. look your child after.
b. Took your clinic arter.
7. You still have some weaknesses. I think you will
soon.
a. get over them
b. get them over
o. get them over

## 18. The Adjectives

"Linda, a blue-eyed girl, was living in a two- storey building with a 72-year-old mother. One day, her mother blamed her for breaking the new green window that she bought from London. Linda went very upset because she wasn't the one who did that. It took a long time to convince her stubborn mother that she hadn't done it..."

An adjective is a word that describes a noun or pronoun. It is said to make a noun or pronoun more specific as it limits the word it describes in some way. Adjectives tell us something about the colour, size, quantity, quality, origin, material, number, distance, possession or classification of a noun or pronoun, as in:

red book, large house, spacious room, tiny can, five children, delicious food, modern languages, little baby, large houses, Indian food, rich people and carton box.

The adjectives could be **predicate** (that comes after the noun/ or pronoun), as in:

- 1. **Ali** is *kind*. 'Ali' precedes the adjective 'kind''.
- 2. **Ali** is *clever*. 'Ali' precedes the adjective 'clever'.

In addition, the adjective could be **attributive** (that comes before the noun/ or pronoun), as in:

Ali and Ahmad are *close friends*. The adjective 'close' precedes 'friends'. Similarly in: Alia is a *stubborn mother*. The adjective 'stubborn' precedes 'mother'.

- **18.1** Order of Adjectives: we usually describe nouns with one or two adjectives, as in:
  - 1. A *spacious* room.
  - 2. A *big white* building.
  - 3. A delicious Chinese food'.

Interestingly, several adjectives may modify one noun or pronoun, as in:

4. The *small black Chinese* cat bit me'.

This calls for an order in which the adjectives appear. The table below shows the order of adjectives you should follow:

Opinion	Size	Age	Shape	Color	Origin Nationality	Material	Noun
nice	large	old	rounded	green	Egyptian	wooden	villa

**Note:** Adjectives don't change their form. They remain the same whether the noun to which they refer is singular or plural.

Many adjectives are formed from either the **past participles** of verbs, or from the **present participles** and so end in (ing), as in:

## <u>Past participles adjectives</u> <u>Present participles adjectives</u>

annoyed	annoying
damaged	damaging
imported	importing
refused	refusing
used	used
bored	boring
captivated	captivating
satisfied	satisfying
worried	worrying
excited	exciting
washed	washing
invited	inviting
occupied	occupying

**Some adjectives end in (ical) or (al)**, particularly nouns ending in (ic). Examples: 'comical' from comic, 'fanatical' from fanatic, 'musical' from music, and 'skeptical' from skeptic.

Sometime the adjectives ending in (ical) are formed from nouns that end in (ics).

These include: 'ethical' from ethics, 'tactical' from tactics, and 'statistical' from statistics.

**Some adjectives end in (ic).** Those are formed from nouns end in (ics), as in 'electronic' from electronics.

## Other common adjective endings include:

'ful' as in 'beautiful' and 'useful'

'less' as in 'graceless' and 'meaningless'

'able' as in 'acceptable' and 'agreeable'

'ible' as in 'accessible' and 'visible'

'ive' as in 'active' and 'impressive'

## 18.2 Present and Past Participle Adjectives:

Some adjectives end in (ing) and some others end in (ed) and the difference in meaning between the two forms of adjectives is as follows:

- **a.** The **present participle adjectives**, that end in (ing), describe what effect they have on others. A present participle adjective describes the source of the effect, as in 'exciting', 'disappointing', and 'boring' in examples below:
  - 1. The programme was *exciting*.
  - 2. The proposal was *disappointing*.
  - 3. The party was *boring*.
- **b.** The **Past Participle adjectives**, that end (ed), describe how we feel and describe the recipient of the action, as in 'excited', disappointed, and 'bored' (in examples bellow):
  - 1. I am really *excited* now. I liked that programme.
  - 2. She is really *disappointed* as she goes against the proposal.
  - 3. I didn't like her birthday party. I felt just *bored*.

## More examples of present and past participle adjectives include: Present participle adjectives Past participle adjectives

producing	produced
arresting	arrested
carrying	carried
exporting	exported
warning	warned

## 18.3 Compound Adjectives

Compound adjectives are adjectives made up of two words or more. The following are the most common forms of compound adjectives:

**a. Present participle**: (adjective+ **verb+ ing**+ noun), as in:

'a good- looking woman'

'a Spanish- speaking teacher'

'a gas producing country'

	Compound adjectives
a company that publishes	an Irish novels <b>publishing</b> company
Irish novels	
a woman who looks good	a good- <i>looking</i> woman'
a teacher who speaks Spanish	a Spanish- <i>speaking</i>
	teacher
a country which produces gas	a gas- <b>producing</b> country
, 1	

## **b. Past participle**: (adjective+ **past participle**+ noun), as in:

'ready- made shirt'

'newly- *published* book'

c. (ed) added to the nouns: (adjective+ noun+ ed + noun), as in:

	Compound adjectives
a girl with blue eyes	a blue- <i>eyed</i> girl
a man with a good temper	a good- <i>tempered</i> man
a shirt with long sleeves	a long- <b>sleeved</b> shirt
a man who has a red face	a red- <b>faced</b> man

**d.** When talking about measurements, the compound adjective can either come after the described noun as in 'a man two meters high', or before the noun, as in:

#### 'a man two meters high'

*n* compound adj.

	Compound adjectives
a hotel that is a hundred feet high	a hundred- foot high hotel
a man who is 20 years old	a twenty- year- old man
a building with 15 stories	a 15-storey building
a woman who is 30 years old	a 30-year- old woman
a ring that costs 30 dollars	a 30- dollar ring

**Note:** In this form of compound adjectives you bring the plural into singular, as in (foot not feet, storey not stories, year not years, and dollar not dollars).

#### Don't forget to:

- 1. Put a/ an initially when making compound adjectives.
- **2.** Put a hyphen ( ) between the adjective and (past participle/ present participle/ noun+ ed).
- 3. In measurements, put a hyphen ( -) between the number and the following name except for the ages and when you talk about years as you put a hyphen (-) before and after the word 'year'.

#### **18.4** Comparative and Superlative:

Comparative degree is used to compare two persons or things whereas superlative degree is used when more than two persons or things are compared.

#### 18.4.1 Comparative degree:

To simplify the way you form comparatives, adjectives can be classified into 'one syllable adjectives', 'two syllable adjectives', and 'three or more syllable adjectives'.

**a.** One-syllable adjectives form their comparatives by adding (er), as in:

large larger (than)
big bigger
short shorter
brave braver
dry drier

## (subject+ verb+ adjective-er/ adverb-er+ than+ noun/ pronoun)

- Rami is shorter than Sami.

**Note:** In adjectives that end in (y) we change (y) into (i) before adding (er).

**b.** Two -syllable adjectives that end in (w), (er), (y), or (le) form their comparatives by adding (er), otherwise, they take (more), as in:

clever clever**er**pretty pretti**er**gentle gentl**er**narrow Narrow**er** 

- Rami is cleverer than Sami.
- **c.** Adjectives with three or more syllables form their comparatives by using 'more' before them, as in:

beautiful more beautiful more realistic sophisticated more sophisticated

#### (subject+ verb+ more adjective/ adverb+ than+ noun/ pronoun)

- Joe drives more cautiously than Bob.
- Joe is more cautious than Bob.
- I behave more carelessly than Ali.
- **d.** Some adjectives are irregular in their comparative forms, as in:

good better bad worse many more little less

far further/farther

- My car is better than yours.

Note: 'er' means exactly the same as 'more'. Therefore, they aren't used together. It isn't correct to say "more better"

#### 18.4.2 Superlative degree:

It is the form of an adjective that expresses the highest or utmost degree of the quality or manner of the word.

**a.** The one -syllable adjectives end in (est), as in:

```
large the largest big the biggest short the shortest brave the bravest
```

(subject+ verb+ the+ adjective+ est+....)

- Hassan is the shortest boy in my family.
- **b.** The longer adjectives use (most), as in:

beautiful the **most** beautiful realistic the **most** realistic sophisticated the **most** sophisticated

(subject+ verb+ the+ most adjective/ adverb....)

- This computer is the most sophisticated of all.
- **c.** Some adjectives have irregular superlative forms, as in:

good the **best**bad the **worst**many the **most**little the **least** 

far the **furthest**/ **farthest** 

- This test is the worst.

#### 18.4.3 Steady/ unsteady degree (equal/ unequal degree)

• An equal comparison indicates that the two entities are exactly the same. To express the equal comparison degree in an adjective that two things or people share, we usually use

the following pattern (subject+ verb+ <u>as+ adjective/</u> <u>adverb+ as+ noun/ pronoun</u>).

Examples:

- Shawkat is **as tall as** she.
- This building is **as high as** the other one.

However, we can use the following words and phrases to show steadiness in the degree of the adjective:

- 1. Similar to: Shawkat's house is similar to Ramzi's.
- 2. Like: My car is like yours.
- 3. So +adj+ as: Hala is so nice as Rami.
- **4.** The same: My wallet and hers are the same.
- 5. The same+ noun+ as: My house is the same height as his.
- 6. Look alike: Those two girls look alike.
- 7. Very +adj+ as: It is very quick as the BMW.
- 8. As+ adj+ as: Shawkat is as tall as Sami.

**Note**: The subject form of the pronoun will always be used after 'as'.

- To express the unequal/ unsteady degree in an adjective we usually use the following pattern (**not+ as+ adjective+ as**).
  - Shawkat is **not as tall as** Ramzi.
  - This building is **not as high as** the other one.

However, we can use the following words and phrases to show unsteadiness in the degree of adjectives:

- **1. Different from**: My watch is **different from** his.
- 2. Not+ so+ adjective+ as: Fadi isn't so strong as Kareem.
- **3. Not like**: The weather in Irbid is**n't like** the weather in Madaba.
- **4. Not the same**: This chair isn't the same as that one.
- **5. Not similar to**: My husband is **not similar to** yours.
- 6. Not as tall as: Shawkat is not as tall as Ramzi.

#### 18.5 Much more comfortable

We can put the following words before a **comparative** to say how much (comfortable, for instance) something is.

(much, a lot, far, rather, slightly, a bit, a little, any, no)

- (Subject+ verb+ far/ much...+ adjective/ adverb+ er+ than+ noun/ pronoun)
- (Subject+ verb+ far/ much...+ more+ adjective/ adverb+ than+ noun/ pronoun)
- (Subject+ verb+ far/ much...+ more+ noun...)

#### **Examples:**

A paper bag is **much better than** a plastic bag.

Modern cars are **far more comfortable than** old cars.

My house is a bit more spacious than yours.

I slept a little earlier than the day before yesterday.

This shop is **slightly bigger than** mine.

You need to spend a lot more time on studying English.

He speaks English much more rapidly than he does French.

Your second wife was **no better than** your first one.

'Any' is used in negative statements and in questions.

This building isn't any higher than Sami's.

Are you playing **any better**?

#### 18.6 better and better/ more and more difficult

We use expressions like (better and better, higher and higher, shorter and shorter, faster and faster, longer and longer, more and more valuable, more and more expensive, more and more children etc.) to say that something is increasing all the time. It also makes the meaning more emphatic.

- The economy was developing **faster and faster** in Jordan.
- The queue of the soldiers is getting **longer and longer**.
- Cotton is getting more and more expensive.
- Jordan government is losing **more and more skilled** people.

<sup>&#</sup>x27;No' has a negative meaning:

#### 18.7 Comparison of nouns

Nouns can also be used in comparisons. You can use the following patterns for guidance:

- (subject+ verb+ as+ many/ much/ little/ few+ noun+ as+ noun/ pronoun)
- (subject+ verb+ more/ fewer/ less+ noun+ than+ noun/ pronoun)

## Examples:

- I have more houses than she.
- They have as few classes as we.
- January has more days than February.
- Sandra has as much information as my sister.

#### 18.8 Double comparatives

We can begin a sentence with a comparative construction, and consequently the second clause must begin with a comparative, as well.

Try to use the following patterns:

- the+ comparative+ subject+ verb+ the comparative+ subject+ verb
- the more+ subject+ verb+ the+ comparative+ subject+ verb

#### For example:

- The higher you fly, the worse you feel.
- The bigger the house is, the harder to clean.
- The hotter it is, the more miserable you feel.
- The more you practice, the more fluent you'll be.
- The more she studies, the more intelligent she becomes.

#### 18.9 Adjectives with linking verbs

Linking verbs, as mentioned earlier, don't show action. They link the subject with its complement. Those verbs must be modified by adjectives, and they include:

Be stay appear feel look smell

Taste seem sound become remain

## Examples:

- Hamad **feels bad** about his result.
- Ibrahim **becomes tired** quickly.
- Lucy will **look attractive** in her new dress.
- Jasmine **smells sweet.**
- This food **tastes delicious**.
- She **remained sad**.
- This music **sounds lovely**.

IKIS			
Exercise (39)			
Select the appr	•		
1. The sea foo			
		b. delicious	c. deliciousness
2. Areej is			
		b. fittest	c. more fit
_		ever.	
•			c. better
4. She is the		•	
		b. most gorgeous	
		s arm chair	rs than ours.
		b. more	c. the most
6. The game w	vas	I really loved it.	
a. intere	ested	b. interesting	c. interestingly
7.Rania is as .		•	
a. healt	hy	b. healthier	c. the healthiest
9. Ali walks			
a. slow		b. slowly	c. slower
10. He drives		•••	
		b. fastingly	
11. My brothe	r has bro	own eyes. He is	
a.browi	n-eyes	b.brown-eyed	c.eyes-browned
Exercise (40)			
		in brackets to fit the	
			ever seen. (interesting)
		isthan the pre	
3.	What is	river in Europ	e? (long)
4. ′	This case	e isthat one. (	bad)
5. My earache isthan it was yesterday. (painful)			
6. Cairo isthan Amman. (large)			
7. 7	This arm	nchair isthan	mine. (comfortable)
8. 7	This is	hotel in Jor	rdan. (high)
	My vase well dec	_	od) yours. Your vase is

10. Ali is ......(strong) a horse. He looks much better today.

#### Exercise (41)

Circle the correct phrase that has the appropriate compound adjective.

- 1. 'A hotel with seven stars' is called a. a seven-star hotel b. a seven- stars hotel
- 2. 'A house with five bed rooms' is called:
  a. a five-bedroom house
  b. a five-bedroom-house
- 3. 'A word with ten letters' is called:
  a. a ten-lettered word
  b. a ten-letter word
- 4. 'A mother who has dark hair' is called:
  a. a dark-haired mother
  b. a dark-hairing mother
- 5. 'A man who is at the age of 110' is called: a. a 110-year-old man b. a-110 year old man

## Exercise (42)

Complete the following table with the correct forms of adjectives. Remember to add only 'r' or 'st' when the adjective ends in 'e'; if the one syllable adjective ends in a vowel, double the last consonant before you ad 'er' or 'est':

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
fine		the finest
short		the shortest
few		
exciting		
nice	nicer	
fat		
difficult		
dim	dimmer	
	uglier	
early		

dry		
young		
		the narrowest
much/ many		most
little	less	
far		

#### Exercise (43)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the adjective:

- 1. I feel .....today. (a bit, good)
- 2. The shop is ......than the mall. (much, expensive)
- 3. The missile went.....into the sky. (high, high)

#### Exercise (44)

Supply the correct form of the adjectives and adverbs in brackets.

- 1. Dove is......(talented) than Maccaine.
- 2. This month is ......(hot) as last month.
- 3. A new apartment is much.....(expensive) than an old one.
- 4. A new apartment is much...(good) than an old one.
- 5. My dog runs.....(fast) than yours.

#### Exercise (45)

Select the correct form in brackets in the following sentences.

- 1. Salma is .....(happier/ the happiest) person we know.
- 2. Ben's car is .....(faster/ the fastest) than Dan's.
- 3. This picture is.....(colourfuller/ more colourful) than the old one
- 4. Hamad is .....(less/ the least) athletic of all men.
- 5. Ahmad has .....(little/ few) opportunities to join the team.

# 19. An Introduction to Adverbs and Adverbial Clauses

#### 19.1 Adverbs.

Adverb is a word that modifies or adds information about a verb, as in 'He works rapidly', about an adjective, as in 'She is an extremely beautiful young lady', or about another adverb, as in 'He is sleeping very soundly'. There are different kinds of adverbs that include:

**a.** Adverbs of place: They tell us where something happened; and they include such words as: (here, there, somewhere, outdoor, underground, and abroad).

## **Examples:**

- His family lives *abroad*.
- I left the keys *somewhere* in the house.
- The new lorry is *there*.
- The train is *underground*.
- **b.** Adverbs of time: They tell us when something happened, and they include such words as:

(now, then, later, soon, and yesterday).

## **Examples:**

- My friends left *yesterday*.
- Salim is listening to the music *now*.
- I will see him *later*.
- I did my homework, then I watched my favourite film.
- **c.** Adverbs of manner tell us how something happens and they include such words as:

(badly, cautiously, hotly, fearlessly, fast, hard, straight, dangerously, and wrong).

#### **Examples:**

- Don't get me wrong.
- Rula ran *fast*.
- I walked *straight* until I came to a roundabout.

- I met the enemy fearlessly.
- **d.** Adverbs of degrees tell us the degree, extent or intensity of something that happens. They include such words as:

(immensely, adequately, partially, and virtually).

#### **Examples:**

- They are *virtually* penniless.
- The two companies are *partially* separated.
- The tank is *adequately* full of water.
- **e. Adverbs of frequency** are used to tell how often something happens, and they include:

(never, rarely, seldom, occasionally, sometimes, often, frequently, always, regularly, constantly, continually, and intermittently).

## **Examples:**

- She *never* eats breakfast.
- He goes to the dentist *regularly*.
- Sometimes I meet my family members in Cyprus.
- I rarely eat noodles.
- **f.** Adverbs of duration tell us how long something takes, and they include:

(briefly, long, indefinitely, always, forever, permanently, and temporarily).

#### **Examples:**

- We stopped *briefly* for some coffee.
- They have gone *forever*.
- Asma is living in Damascus temporarily.
- **g.** Adverbs of emphasis add emphasis to the action described by the verb, and they include:

(absolutely, certainly, quite, definitely, really, simply, and just).

## **Examples:**

- I *simply* must go now.
- Your parents *certainly* detest each other.
- I'm just happy.
- **h.** Adverbs of probability. They are used to tell us how sure

something will happen, and they include:

(probably, possibly, perhaps, maybe, presumably, hopefully, definitely, certainly, and conceivably).

## **Examples:**

- You will *probably* see them there.
- I'm *definitely* in the competition.
- **i. Interrogative adverbs** ask questions, and they include (where, when, how, why, what, etc.), as in:
  - Where are you going?
  - What is Sam doing tonight?
  - How old are you?

#### 19.2 Adverbial clauses

An adverbial clause is a subordinate clause that modifies the main clause by adding information about time, place, concession, condition, manner, purpose, reason and result, etc.

**a.** An adverbial clause of time indicates the time of an event, and is introduced by a conjunction such as (after, as, before, the moment, until, when, as soon as, and whilst) e.g.:

(after, as, before, the moment, until, when, as soon as, and whilst)

## **Examples:**

- He left <u>after the meal was served</u>.
  - Adverbial clause of time
- The thief ran away <u>when he saw the police patrol</u>.

  Adverbial clause of time

- <u>As soon as I get my certificate</u>, I will travel to Paris. Adverbial clause of time
- **b.** An adverbial clause of place indicates the location of an event, and is introduced by a conjunction such as: 'where', and 'everywhere'.

"They left the keys *where they found them*".

Adverbial clause of place

- **c. An adverbial clause of concession** contains a fact that contrasts in some way with the main clause, and is introduced by a conjunction such as (although, despite, in spite of, even though, while, whilst, and whereas). **Examples**:
  - He did so well in the math test <u>although he isn't clever</u>.

    Adverbial clause of concession
  - Russell went to school <u>in spite of her illness</u>.

    Adverbial clause of concession
  - I'm busy whereas Mohammad is free.

    Adverbial clause of concession
- **d.** An adverbial clause of condition deals with possible situation, and is introduced by conjunctions: (if, only if, unless, providing, as long as, and provided), as in:
  - We can't get in <u>unless we get permission</u>.

    Adverbial clause of conditions
  - <u>If you are thirsty</u>, drink water. Adverbial clause of condition
  - As long as you are busy, I'll not disturb you.

    Adverbial clause of condition

**e. An adverbial clause of manner** describes the way that someone behaves or the way in which something is done, and is introduced by a conjunction such as (as, as if, like, the way), e.g.:

He looked at Sherrie as if he hated her.

- **f.** An adverbial clause of purpose indicates the intention someone has when doing something and is introduced by a conjunction such as (to, in order to, so, so as to, so that, for ), e.g.:
  - He kicked the child just *to upset his mother*.
  - He works hard to earn more money.
- **g.** An adverbial clause of reason explains why something happens, and is introduced by a conjunction such as (because, since, because of, and as), as in:
  - We didn't visit my cousin <u>because the car broke</u> down.
  - As the weather is cold, we are not going out tonight.
- **h.** An adverbial clause of result indicates the result of an event, and is introduced by a conjunction such as (so, so that), as in:
  - She fell off the bike so that she broke her le.g.
  - Liza arrived a bit late so she was punished.

# **20.** Conditional Clauses (If, Unless, Wish)

## 20.1 Types of conditional clauses

There are four types of conditional clauses, each of them consists of two parts: the 'if clause' and the 'main clause'. The following table helps you get familiar with those types easily.

Type 1 <sup>st</sup>
conditional
<b>(Type 1)</b>

## **Meaning**

Used to mean that the *action:* 

is probable, possible or likely to happen in the future.

## **Forms and Examples**

(If+ present simple, will/ shall/ can/ may/ must/ should/ have to+ bare infinitive):

- 1. If you *run* fast, you *will catch* the train.
- 2. If you *obey* the orders, you *can succeed*.
- 3. If you *want* to do well in the IELTS test, you *should work* hard.
- \* The verb in the 'if clause' could be in 'present progressive' tense, as in:
- If you *are studying* hard, you *may find* it easy to pass.

# 2<sup>nd</sup> conditional (Type 2)

Used when the action is not true now or improbable/ unlikely to happen; it is also used when we talk about unreal or hypothetical situations.

(If+ past simple, would/ could/ might + bare infinitive)

- 1. If I were the president, I'd lower taxes.
- 2. If I *found* a wallet wit \$5000 in it, *I'd report* it to the nearest police station.
- 3. If you *solved* the puzzle, you *would win* the game. (You probably won't

win the game) 4. If you *played* well, you *would win*. (You probably won't play well) \* "We usually use 'were' with all nouns and pronouns in type 2"; and we use this pattern to give advice, as in: - If I were you, I would go to the dentist. 3<sup>rd</sup> Used when the action (If+ past perfect, would/ could/ is *impossible* to conditional might + have + p.p.**(Type 3)** happen, and when a past action didn't 1. If she *had married* early, she *would* have had a baby. (She didn't marry happen early. She didn't have a baby.) 2. If he *had had* enough time, he *could* have visited you. Used to describe rules General/ (if+ present simple, present simple) In zero conditional we don't use and something that is Zero modals. conditional always true/ or it regularly happens. It has general 1. If I *feel* thirsty, I *drink* water. meaning, and it 2. If you *boil* water, it *evaporates*. doesn't refer to the 3. If you *stop* smoking, you *save* future. money.

solve the puzzle, so it is unlikely to

**Note: 'Open conditional'** is a type of conditional sentences. In this type **'present tense'** is used in the conditional clause and **'imperative'** is used in the main clause, for example:

- If you need any help, give me a call.

**Note:** The 'if clause' can start or end a conditional sentence. When the 'if clause' starts a sentence, we use a comma after the 'if clause'.

- If I were you, I would go to the dentist.

- I would go to the dentist if I were you.

## For more clarification, consider the following examples:

#### First conditional

- If I'm late, I will phone the supervisor.
- If I go shopping, I'll buy some pens.
- How will you get home if you miss the bus?
- <u>If the tickets are</u> too expensive, I <u>won't be</u> able to get one.
- <u>If Mary doesn't feel</u> well, she <u>won't go</u> to school.
- <u>If it doesn't stop</u> raining, our house <u>will be</u> flooded.
- If I have the money, I'll buy a new car.
- <u>If you want</u> to pick up some food, you <u>should</u> <u>use</u> the upper chopstick.

## Second conditional

- If I were you, I'd get the right shirt.
- <u>If I were</u> you, <u>I wouldn't run</u> in the dark.
- If I were you, I'd wear comfortable clothing.
- What <u>would you do if you found</u> some money?
- I <u>would buy</u> a new camera <u>if I had</u> more money.
- <u>If you told</u> me a secret, <u>I wouldn't tell</u> anyone.
- If I missed the train, I would walk to school.
- <u>If I had</u> the time, <u>I'd go</u> to the beach this weekend.
- <u>If he were</u> here, he <u>would tell</u> you about the case.
- <u>If he didn't speak</u> so loudly, you <u>could</u> <u>understand</u> him.
- <u>If people switched</u> to chopsticks, eating on the move <u>would be</u> useless.

#### Third conditional

- <u>If I had known</u> that you were in Qatar, <u>I'd</u> have written you a letter.
- <u>If Alia had found</u> the right agent, <u>she would</u> have sold the old boat.
- <u>If we hadn't lost</u> our way, we <u>would have</u> arrived a bit earlier.
- If pressure <u>had been put</u> on resources, people <u>could have forced</u> the authorities to conserve fuel.

## General conditional

- If I'm hungry, I eat some food.
- <u>If you feel</u> cold, <u>wear</u> some warm clothes.
- If you are tired, go to bed.
- <u>If you turn off</u> extra lights, you <u>save</u> energy.
- If my doctor has free time, he visits his

patients in the hospital.

- If Ali has enough time, he usually walks to

school.

#### 20.2 'If ' and 'Unless'

'Unless' means 'if not'. Sometimes you are asked to rewrite a sentence that uses 'if' to another using unless. The following are the way of doing that:

#### If the verb in the 'if clause' is negative

**a.** Omit 'if' and 'don't' from the sentence and leave what is left in the sentences as it is, then use 'unless' instead of 'if'.

If you don't come, you will suffer. Unless you come, you will suffer.

**b.** Omit 'if' and 'doesn't' from the sentence and add 's' or 'es' to the verb that comes after 'doesn't', then use 'unless' instead of 'if'.

If she doesn't drink water, she will die.

**Unless** she **drinks** water, she will die.

- If Sue doesn't have a car, she can't come.

**Unless** she **has** a car, she can't come.

**c.** Omit 'If' and 'didn't' and write the past form of the verb that comes after 'didn't', then use 'unless' instead of 'if'.

If he didn't write a letter, he would be fired.

**Unless** he **wrote** a letter, he would be fired.

- **d.** Omit only 'if' and 'not' if be or have is used in the sentence and use 'unless'.
  - If she is not good at physics, she can't pass.

Unless she is good at physics, she can't pass.

- If she hasn't money, she can't join us.

Unless she has money, she can't join us.

**e.** Add 'not' to the main clause when you use 'unless' in case the sentence with 'if' was affirmative.

If he plays well, he will win.

**Unless** he plays well, he will **not** win.

## If the 'if clause' is affirmative and the main clause is negative:

**f.** If the 'if clause' is affirmative and the 'main clause' is negative, omit 'not'/ the negation from the main clause and use 'unless' instead of 'if'.

If the weather is cold, we won't go swimming.

**Unless** the weather is cold, we'll go swimming.

- **Providing / provided** means 'if', as in:
  - Providing no one shouts at you, you will be able to concentrate and solve the puzzle.

#### 20.3 Wish.

'Wish' mustn't be followed by any present tense verb or auxiliary.

#### 20.3.1 Wish...would/could (future wish)

'Wish... would' expresses a wish for a change in behaviour, as in:

- I **wish** you **would** be more patient with your boss. (you probably won't be)
- I wish you wouldn't fight with your parents anymore. Besides, 'wish...would' expresses a wish for something to happen, as in:
  - I **wish** you **would** find a real value out of *'The Binos'* dictionary of military terms- by Etaywe Awni.
  - I wish your car would work properly.
  - I wish you could come to the party.

## 20.3.2 Wish.... Simple past tense verb (present wish)

'Wish' with 'a past tense verb' express a wish for the present situation to be different, as in:

- This villa isn't big enough. I **wish** it **was** much bigger. (it is not big enough)
- I can't afford a Mercedes car. I wish I had a better income.

## 20.3.3 Wish... past perfect

We use Wish and past perfect to express a past wish, as in:

- I **wish** I **had told** the judge the truth. I'm in jail now for not telling the truth. (This means 'I didn't tell the truth')
- I **wish** I **hadn't got rid** of the governor's phone number. I really need him. (This means 'I already got rid of the number')
- I ate too many sweet cakes. I don't feel well. I wish I hadn't eaten too many sweet cakes. (It means that I shouldn't have eaten too many sweet cakes)
- I didn't do enough work when I was at scool. I wish I had done enough work when I was at school.

#### **20.4** Hope

**Hope** and **wish** are similar in meaning but different in grammar. 'Hope' indicates something which possibly happened or will possibly happen. 'Hope' can be followed by any tense. As in:

- I **hope** that **you'll** come tonight.

(I don't know if you're coming)

- I **hope** that they **came** last night. (I don't know if they came)

# 20. 5 As if/ as though

**As if**, and **as though** indicate something unreal/ or contrary to the fact. The verb that follows these conjunctions must be in the past tense or past perfect. Try to follow the following patterns:

- -"Subject+ verb (present)+ as if/ as though+ subject+ verb (past simple)"
- -"Subject+ verb (past)+ as if/ as though+ subject+ verb (past perfect)"
  - The lady **treats** me <u>as if she were</u> my mother. (She is not my mother)
  - Asma walks as though she studied fashion. (She didn't study fashion)
  - Rasmi **looked** <u>as if he had seen</u> a monster. (He didn't see a monster)
  - Majed **looked** <u>as though he had run</u> ten kilometers. (He didn't run ten k.m)

•	•	111
HVA	rcise	1461
LAU	LUISU	\TV/

$\sim$	•	•			
Correct	tha	Marhe	1n	hrac	lzate.
COLICCI		velus	111	mac	NULO.

- 1. If I were you, I ...... to Spain. (travel)
- 2. If you jump a bit higher, you ...... the record. (break)
- 3. If she had had an extra payment, she ...... the project. (finish)
- 4. Unless you ...... (keep) your voice down, you will be dismissed.
- 5. If you freeze the water in that bottle, the water...... (expand)
- 6. If I knew the answer, I ...... (tell) you.
- 7. If you take cannabis, you..... (be) an addict.
- 8. If she..... (listen) to my advice, she wouldn't have made a mistake.
- 9. Unless he pays attention, he ...... (get) high score this term.
- 10. I would be surprised if Sami...... Alia. (marry)
- 11. If I get the award, I ..... it to my chief.(give)
- 12. If I had seen Lady Macbeth, I ..... with her. (live)
- 13. If I were a lord, I ...... a castle. (buy)
- 14. If she is hungry, she..... (eat) a sandwich.
- 15. If you ...... (be) tired, go to bed early.
- 16. Asma walks as though she ...... fashion. (study)
- 17. Rasmi looked as if he ...... a monster. (see)
- 18. George ...... on a trip to Honolulu if he had had time.

  (go)
- 19. If I had a bike, I ...... it every morning. (ride)
- 20. I wish I ...... A lot of money. You know I'm really poor. (have)

# Exercise (47)

Rewrite the following sentences.

1.	If I	wasn't	sick,	I would	attend th	ie sessio	n.	
Unle	ss							

2.	If you call her, she will be grateful.
Unle	ess
3.	Shadi isn't telling me the truth.
[ wi	sh
4.	I can't pay any attention.
[ wi	sh
5.	I woke up late this morning and I missed the flight to
Ams	sterdam.
[ xx/i	sh

# 21. Conjunctions (A)

There are words in English language you can use to link or connect words, phrases, clauses, and ideas. These words have particular meanings and some of them convey special relationships between the sentence parts.

#### 21.1 'Both...and'

'Both...and'follows the following formulas:

- a. (Subject+ verb+ both+ adjective+ and+ adjective)
  - Robert is both clever and polite.
- **b.** (Subject+ verb+ both+ noun + and + noun)
  - Bernard plays both violin and the guitar.
- c. (Subject+ verb+ both+ adverb+ and+ adverb)
  - She writes both quickly and neatly.
- **d.** (Subject+ verb+ both+ prepositional phrase+ and + prepositional phrase)
  - He excels both in physics and in literature.
- e. (Subject+ not only+ verb+ but also+ verb)
  - Bernard both plays the violin and writes stories.
- 21.2 'So' and 'Such' can be used to indicate a cause and effect relationship, following these formulas:
  So:

#### a

a. (Subject+ verb+ so+ adjective/ adverb+ that+ subject+ verb)

As in:

- Britney sang so well that she received many awards.
- The sea food tastes so good that I will ask for more.
- b. (Subject+ verb+ so+ many/ few+ plural countable noun+ that+ subject+ verb)

As in:

- I have so many young sons that they will form my own football team.
- I had so few options that I could select one easily.
- c. (Subject+ verb+ so+ much/ little+ mass noun+ that+ subject+ verb)

As in:

- Ramzi gave me so much money that I can buy a new house.
- I have so little milk that I can't give you some.
- d. (Subject+ verb+ so+ adjective+ a+ singular countable noun+ that+ subject+ verb), as in:
- It was so cold a night that I stayed indoors.

#### Such:

a. (Subject+ verb+ such+ adjective+ plural count noun/ mass noun+ that+ subject+ verb)

As in:

- Marwan has such exceptional skills that I'm jealous of him.
- I have such difficult homework that I won't finish it quickly.
- b. (Subject+ verb+ such+ a+ adjective+ singular countable noun+ that+ subject+ verb)

As in:

- He is such a bad boy that I don't like him.
- 21.3 Not only...but also can be used in the following formulas:
  - a. (Subject+ verb+ not only + adjective+ but also + adjective)
  - Robert is not only clever but also polite.
  - **b.** (Subject+ verb+ not only + noun + but also + noun)
  - Bernard plays not only the violin but also the oud.
  - c. (Subject+ verb+ not only + adverb+ but also + adverb)

- She writes *not only quickly but also neatly*.
- **d.** (Subject+ verb+ not only + prepositional phrase+ but also + prepositional phrase)
- He excels not only in physics but also in literature.
- e. (Subject+ not only+ verb+ but also+ verb)
- Bernard *not only plays* the violin *but also writes* stories.
- **21.4** 'as well as' can be used in the following formulas:
  - a. (Subject+ verb+ noun+ as well as+ noun)
  - George plays the guitar as well as the violin.
  - b. (Subject+ verb+ adjective+ as well as+ adjective)
  - George is talented as well as handsome.
  - c. (Subject+ verb+ adverb + as well as+ adverb)
  - He writes quickly as well as neatly.
  - d. (Subject+ verb+ prepositional phrase+ as well as+ prepositional phrase)
  - He excels in physics as well as in maths.
  - e. (Subject+ verb+ as well as+ verb)
  - Bernard *plays* the violin *as well as composes* music.

#### 21.5 Because, because of, since, now that, as, due to.

The following table shows the use of conjunctions which have reason/cause-effect relationship, mentioned in adverbial clauses.

- They're going to put on their jackets

because it is getting cold.

- I didn't try to drive his car because

of its bad condition.

- Because of the hot weather, I stayed

home.

Since - Since he's confident, he decided to

meet the crown prince.

Now that I've done my job, I'm going

to take a leave.

- As he made fun of Jim, he had a

problem with Jim's dad.

**Due to**- Due to the windy weather, I didn't

leave my camp.

**Note:** 'Because', 'since', 'now that', and 'as' are followed by a verb phrase, or a clause. 'Because of' and 'due to' are followed by a noun phrase.

-I took my shirt off because it was hot.

- -Since I have to book my flight soon, please let me know if you are coming with me.
- -Now that it was cold, I put on warm clothes.
- -As it is slippery, I have to drive carefully.

.....

- -I took my shirt off because of the hot weather
- -Due to the need to book my flight soon, please let me know if you are coming with me.
- -Because of/ Due to my experience in teaching English, I can help you with your lessons.

# 21.6 But, although, even though, though, in spite of, despite.

The following are conjunctions used to show a relationship of concession in adverbial clauses:

**But (when used to link** - I arrived late, *but I found a seat*.

two clauses)

**Although** - **Although** I arrived late, I found a

seat.

**Even though/Though** - **Though** it was cold, he wasn't

(means the same as

although)

In spite of/ despite - I succeeded in spite of/ despite the

difficult test.

- I couldn't run in spite of/despite

feeling fitter than before.

wearing warm clothes.

**However** - Ali is clever. *However*, *he didn't* 

achieve good results.

**Nevertheless** - It is freezing; *nevertheless*, *he'll go* 

out.

Note: 'However', 'nevertheless' is followed by a comma and a

clause (V+ S+ Complement).

**Note:** 'Although', 'though' and 'even though' are followed by verb phrases. Whereas 'In spite of' and 'despite' are followed by noun

phrases, noun or the 'ing' form of a verb.

# 22. Conjunctions (B)

# 22.1 and, and...too, but, whereas, while, also, as well,

both...and, and not...either.

Words	Use	Examples
	to connect two affirmative	- I went shopping and I bought
And	clauses (used to add	some fruit.
	information)	- Ahmad and Ali are staying
		home today.
	to connect two affirmative	(1) I like fish, and my wife likes
	sentences but of different	fish, too.
Andtoo	subjects.	(2) I will go to Finland, and
		Fahad, too.
		(3) I can play football, and
		basketball, too.
	- to connect an affirmative	- Ali is fat <b>but</b> his father is thin.
	sentence and a negative	- Ali likes playing football <b>but</b>
But	sentence	he doesn't like to play
Dut	- to connect a positive	basketball.
	adjective/ adverb with a	- Ali is fat <b>but</b> handsome.
	negative adjective/ adverb.	- Ali works hard <b>but</b> carefully.
	to compare two things/ or	- Jeffrey is rich whereas Janet
Whereas/	people showing opposition	is poor.
while		- Qasim is polite while Sari is
		impolite.
	to add information: it comes	-Husam is a great teacher. He <b>is</b>
	after auxiliaries and before	also a good father.
Also= too	the main verb	- Husam teaches the poor
		children English language. He
		also helps the elderly.
As well= too	to add some information	-Elizabeth studies French and
		English, as well.
Bothand	to connect two subjects	- <b>Both</b> Ahmad <b>and</b> Sami are
		leaving tomorrow.

And not	to connect two negative	- I don't like milk <b>and</b> Ali
either	clauses	doesn't either.
Either	- There are palm trees on <b>either</b> bank of the Nile river.	
	_	

# 22.2 After, before, when, while, as, since, until, as soon as, whenever, the first time.

The following table shows the use of conjunctions which have time relationships in adverbial clauses:

Words	Examples
After	- After she arrived, she joined the NY Police
	Department (NYPD).
	- After I had read the story, I went to bed.
Before	- Before you arrive, I will leave.
	- You should be there <i>before</i> the crowds arrive.
When	- When I was in Paris, I met Sam.
	- Can you tell me when lunch is ready?
While	- While I was watching T.V, my wife entered.
As	- As I was talking to Mary, her father came in.
Since	- I haven't seen Suzan since I left the town.
Until	- I stayed at home <i>until</i> I did my homework.
	- I played tennis, <i>until</i> it got dark.
As soon as	- As soon as the train stops, I will give you a call.
	- As soon as I saw the advertisement, I called my
	mother.
As long as	- I will never talk to Fahed again as long as I live.
Whenever	- Whenever Rana sees her boss, he shouts at him.
The first time	- The first time I saw her, we went for a walk.
The last time	- The last time I studied French, I really liked it.

**Note:** When an adverbial clause comes before an independent clause, a comma (,) is used to separate the clauses. When an adverbial clause comes after an independent clause, no comma is used, as in:

'When I told him the truth, he became angry.'

'He became angry when I told him the truth.'

#### 22.3 To, in order to, so that, for.

The following table shows the use of conjunctions which have purpose relationships in adverbial clauses:

**To** - Sam works *to earn more money*.

- I went to the shop to buy some food.

In order to - The staff is working hard in order to

complete the project early.

**So that** - I will give you a map **so that** you can

get there easily.

**For** + **noun phrase** - My wife went **for** a bike ride.

- Sa'ad plays *for fun*.

**Note:** 'To' and 'in order to' are followed by (infinitive).

'So that' used before a subject and a main verb. 'For' is followed by a noun phrase/ or gerund.

# **22.4** Conjunctions Expressing Results:

So The T.V didn't work, so I took it back to

the shop.

Therefore/ consequently/ as

a result

She didn't exercise regularly. *Therefore*/

consequently/ as a result, she had a

sprained ankle.

**Note:** 'Therefore', 'consequently', and 'as a result' come in the middle of sentences followed by a comma and preceded by a coma/ or full stop. Besides, they are followed by a clause (V+ S+ Complement).

The following examples show how we use (so, therefore, consequently, and as a result):

- Alia studied hard, so she succeeded.
- Alia studied hard. Therefore, she succeeded.

- Alia studied hard. Consequently, she succeeded.

#### 22.5 'So that'.

'So that' is used to show purpose and result. After 'so that' is a result clause with a subject and a verb. As in:

# (subject+ verb+ so that+ subject+ verb)

- Osama studied hard so that he could pass the exam.
- Ibrahim is sending the card early so that it will arrive in time for his wife's birthday.

# 22.6 Not only... but also, Either... or, Neither... nor.

You can connect two subjects by (not only/ but also, either/ or, and neither/ nor). Examples:

Not only... but also

- **Not only** Sami **but also** *Ahmad is* swimming in the pool.

- **Not only** Rami **but also** his *cousins are* coming tonight.

Either... or

- **Either** small box **or** *malaria is* a

dangerous disease.

- I can drink **either** Coke **or** orange

juice.

- Your car must be  $either\ BMW\ or$ 

Toyota.

Neither... nor

- **Neither** my relatives **nor** my wife is

flying to Paris.

Exercise (48)
Select the appropriate answers of the following sentences:

1.	you don't	have any questioi	n, I will leave.
	a. Provided	b. Because	c. Although
2.	I went shopping	the weather	er was cold.
	a. despite	b. therefore	c. although
3.	The wear	ther was cold sl	ne didn't visit her
	father.		
	a. Because	b. Due to	c. But
4.	I was wal	king down the st	reet, I meet an old
	friend.	_	
	a. While	b. Before	c. As soon as
5.	Both my father and	my sister	here.
	a. are	b. is	c. were
6.	Not only my broth		
	here.	·	
	a. are	b. is	c. were
7.	Neither my children		
	a. nor	b. or	c. and
8.	the restar	urant was crowd	led, I managed to
book a	a table.		
	a. But	b. Although	c. Despite
9.	The heater is	keeping the	e house warm in
winter	•		
	a. for	b. to	c. but
10.	A: I'm in a good	d mood.	
	B:		
	a. so am I	b. neither do I	c. too
11.	The clerk stopped	I came in	
	a. as soon as	b. during	c. for
12.	The bus was late	I took a ca	lb.
		b. because of	
13.	The IELTS test see	ms difficult	, I'll attend it.
	a. But	b. However	c. Therefore

14.	The child took th	e pres	scribed vacci	ne;	, he
got si	ick.				
	a. nevertheless	s b.	despite	c. for	
15.	Hani ran not only	fast	but also	• • • • • •	
	a. care	b.	careful	c. carefully	
16.	Hani is both kind	and			
	a. clever	b.	cleverness	c. cleverly	

# Exercise (49)

Rewrite the following sentences so that they have similar meaning.

1.	Although I slept early, I couldn't wake up on time.
In spit	e of
2. Iraq.	Ahmad postponed his flight because there is a war in

Because of.....

# Exercise (50)

Supply either 'because' or 'because of' as appropriate.

- 1. It isn't easy to send your letter.....you have written the wrong address.
- 2. I'll leave early.....the party is very boring.
- 3. SOS team arrived late..... the bad weather.
- 4. Salman can't join the university team .....his grades.
- 5. Many British people died last summer.....the heat.

### Exercise (51)

Use either 'so' or 'such' in these sentences as appropriate.

- 1. The sun is shining .....brightly that I have to put on my sunglasses.
- 2. Deema is .....a powerful runner that she always wins the races.

### Exercise (52)

A: Supply the missing linkers (not only...but also, both...and) in the following sentences:

- 1. Mr. Eyad speaks...... Spanish but also English.
- 2. I have villas .....in the country and in the city.

B: Supply the missing word ('so' or 'such') in the following sentences:

- 1. We had ...... a bad night that we couldn't sleep.
- 2. She gave me ...... good a stereo that I was very grateful to her.
- 3. The day was ..... hot that everyone went to the sea.
- 4. The motel has ...... a comfortable room that I don't want to leave.
- 5. It was ...... dark that I couldn't see my finger.
- 6. That restaurant has ...... delicious food that I can't stop eating.

# 23. Interrogatives

There are three major types of questions, in English: tag questions, Yes/ No questions and Wh-questions. In this unit you will learn the rules and steps of how to make those three types, including the embedded questions.

# 23.1 Tag Questions (Question Tags).

This type of questions is used for checking and confirming some information.

The table below shows the steps you should follow to make tag questions.

## **Steps**

- 1. **Put a comma** before the tag phrase.
- 2. **Place the auxiliary** verb to be/ to have/ to do/ or **modal** verb if Available in the statement. If the statement is affirmative, the tag is negative and vice versa.

# (When there is no auxiliary in the statement)

- 3. If the verb in the statement is in present simple tense, use 'does' (when the subject is singular- its verb ends in s/es), or 'do' (when the verb is plural). Use 'did' if the verb is past simple.
- 4. **Use a pronoun**, not a name, that refers to the subject.

5. With 'someone', 'somebody', 'everyone' and 'everybody' use **'they'**.

6. With imperative, use 'will (not)+ you'.

7. (I'm) becomes (aren't I) in tag question.

**Note:** When the statement is negative, the answer is negative.

When it is affirmative, the answer is affirmative.

**Note:** The verb 'have' may be used as a main verb (I have two kids) or it may be used as an auxiliary (Ali has gone to school already). When it functions as a main verb in American English, the auxiliary forms (do, does, did) must

be used in the tag, for example: You have two children, don't you?

# **Consider the following examples:**

1. Tom is angry, isn't he?

Yes, he is.

2. Tom isn't angry, is he?

No, he isn't.

3. Rula will sit for the test tomorrow, won't she?

Yes, she'll

4. Rula won't sit for the test tomorrow, will she?

No, she won't

5. Ali and Shadi played football, didn't they?

Yes, they did.

6. Ali and Shadi didn't play football, did they?

No, they didn't.

7. You have to write a future plan essay, don't you? Yes, I do.

8. He has to write a future plan essay, doesn't he? Yes, he does.

9. You had to take a cap, didn't you?

Yes, I did.

10. It rains in winter, doesn't it?

Yes, it does.

11. He must leave, mustn't he?

Yes, he must.

12. Dan is a good teacher, isn't he?

Yes, he is.

13. Dan isn't a good teacher, is he?

No, he isn't.

14. Samia cooks well, doesn't she?

Yes, she does

15. Everyone laughed at him, didn't they?

Yes, they did.

16. Don't open the window, will you?No, I won't.17. I'm a teacher, aren't I?Yes, you are.18. I have read well, haven't I?Yes, I have.

#### 23.2 Embedded Questions

# 23.2.1 Embedded yes/no questions

We usually use embedded yes/no questions introduced by the following formula: (*if*/ *whether*+ *subject*+ *verb*+ *complement*) as a noun clause in a statement, as in:

- Was it overcast yesterday?

I don't know if it was overcast yesterday.

Embedded question

Can you tell me **if it was overcast yesterday**?

Embedded yes/no question

#### 23.2.2 Embedded Wh-questions

When a Wh- questions is embedded, it becomes a noun clause introduced by the same wh- question word following this pattern (*what/when...+subject+verb+complement*), as in:

#### - Where is the best hotel?

I don't know where the best hotel is.

Embedded wh-question

Can you tell me where the best hotel is?

Embedded wh- question

In general, the complete formulas for the embedded questions are:

1. (Subject+ verb (phrase)+ I/ whether+ subject+ verb...)

We don't know **if he is coming**.

2. (Subject+ verb (phrase)+ wh-question word+ subject+ verb...)

We don't know where the meeting will take place.

**3.** (Auxiliary+ subject+ verb+ question word+ subject+ verb) Can you tell me how far the museum is from the college?

# 23.3 Yes/ No questions

- a. When there is an auxiliary or a modal in the sentence, such as; 'do', 'does', 'did', 'is', 'are', 'am', was', 'were', 'can', 'could', 'must', etc.':
- (1) Put the auxiliary/ modal verb first.
- (2) Put the subject.
- (3) Put the main verb.
- (4) Write the rest of the sentence, finishing with (?).

# (auxiliary/ modal+ subject+ verb...) For example:

(4)

roi example.

- Hani **has** built a new house.

Has Hani built a new house?

- (1) (2) (3)
- Ali **can** speak English well.

Can Ali speak English well?

- (1) (2) (3) (4)
- Ali **is** calling his dad on the phone.

<u>Is Ali calling his dad on the phone?</u>

- (1)(2)(3)
- (+)
- Raheil **should** leave.

Should Raheil leave?

(1) (2) (3)

#### More examples:

- They **have** broken the lock.

Have they broken the lock?

- Sally is perfect.

Is Sally perfect?

- My ex-wife **is** two- faced.

Is my ex-wife two- faced?

- Rahma was lazy.

Was Rahma Lazy?

- **b.** When there is no auxiliary in the sentence, use 'do', 'does' or 'did'.
  - (1) Drop the 's/es' from the present simple verb of the singular subject when you use 'does' in the question. Then, follow steps 2,3, and 4 mentioned in paragraph (23.3/a) above.
  - (2) When you use 'do', you don't make any changes to the plural present simple verb; you only follow steps 2,3, and 4 mentioned in paragraph (23.3 / a) above.
  - (3) When you use 'did' for the past simple verb, use the base form of the main verb in your question.

#### For example:

- Rami plays football.

Does Rami play football?

- The company employees agree on the proposals.

Do the company employees agree on the proposals?

- The piano player composed a new symphony.

Did the piano player compose a new symphony?

#### 23.4 Negative interrogative

Negative interrogative means that you begin your Yes/ No question with negative form of auxiliaries. Examples:

- Don't you speak French? (informal style)
   Do you not speak French? (formal style)
   No, I don't. (Or) Yes, I do.
- Doesn't Hayfa look stunning?
   Does Hayfa not look stunning?

No, she doesn't. (Or) Yes, she does.

- Isn't Issam writing a fairy tale? Is Issam not writing a fairy tale? No, he isn't. (Or) Yes, he is.
- Didn't Shadi help Salma?
   Did Shadi not help Salma?
   No, he didn't. (Or) Yes, he did.
- Wasn't Rania kind with you?
   Was Rania not kind with you?
   No, she wasn't. (Or) Yes, she was.
- Weren't the students fighting in the classroom? Were the students not fighting in the classroom? No, they weren't. (Or) Yes, they were.
- Haven't you spoken to your ex-wife? Have you not spoken to your ex-wife? No, I haven't. (Or) Yes, I have.
- Mustn't Nizar attend the conference?
   Must Nizar not attend the conference?
   No, he mustn't. (Or) Yes, he must.

### **23.5** Wh-questions (Information Questions)

**a.** We use this type of questions to gain some information we are asking about. Consider the table below:

Who	Use To ask about a subject (it refers to people)	Examples -Who is that? That is AhmadWho broke the vase? Ahmad broke the vase.
Where	To ask about places	- Where is John? At home - Where are you? In Amman.
What	To ask about subject/ object of the question (it refers to things)	<ul><li>- What did he say? He said nothing.</li><li>- What caused the disturbance?</li><li>The explosion caused it.</li></ul>

Which	Selection, or pinpointing	<ul><li>- Which driver came last? The red car's driver.</li><li>- Which pen is mine? The big one.</li></ul>
Whose	Possession, or relationship	- <i>Whose</i> house is that? It is <i>mine</i> .
When	To ask about time	- When did you go to school? At 7 o'clock.
Why	To ask about reasons	- Why does he wake up early?  Because he respects timing.
Whom How	To ask about the object of the verb To ask about state/ condition/ the how	<ul> <li>- Whom did you give it to?</li> <li>I gave it to Jeff.</li> <li>- How are you? I'm fine.</li> <li>- A: How do you get your homework done quickly?</li> <li>B: My father helps me.</li> </ul>
How many	To ask about countable nouns	<ul><li>- How many students answered the question? Twenty one.</li><li>- How many sugar bags do you need? Three bags of sugar.</li></ul>
How much	To ask about mass nouns and money	<ul><li>- How much money do you have?</li><li>I have a lot of money.</li><li>- How much salt do you need?</li><li>- Bags of salt.</li></ul>
How far	To ask about distance	- <i>How far</i> is it from Masawa to Asmara? 20 miles.
How often	To ask about frequency	- How often do you visit your grand parents? <i>Once</i> a month.

How long	To ask about length/ or duration	<ul> <li>How long does the trip take? 25 minutes.</li> <li>How long have you been in England? For20 years.</li> </ul>
How old	To ask about age	- How old is Ali? He is 30 years old.
How tall	To ask about the height of a person	- How tall are you? I'm 177 centimeters tall.
How wide	To ask about width	- <i>How wide</i> is this road? It is 10 m wide.
How high	To ask about height	- <i>How high</i> is that mountain? It is <i>400 meters high</i> .
How deep	To ask about the depth	- How deep is the Suez canal? It's not less than 30 meters deep.

- **b.** Steps of how to form 'wh-questions':
- (whom/what...+ auxiliary/ do, does, did+ subject+ verb...)
- (when/ where/ how/ why+ auxiliary/ do, does, did+ subject+ verb+ object)
  - (1) When a sentence has an auxiliary:
    - i. Select the suitable wh-word.
    - ii. Write the auxiliary.
    - iii. Write the subject.
    - iv. Write the main verb.
    - v. Write the rest of the question.
    - vi. Omit the phrase that you are asking about.
    - vii. Write a question mark (?).

# **Examples:**

Ali will visit Petra tomorrow morning.

- What will Ali visit tomorrow morning? (Petra)
  - I ii iii iv v
- When will Ali visit Petra? (Tomorrow morning)

# (2) When a sentence has no auxiliary:

- i. Select the appropriate wh-word.
- ii. If the main verb is in present simple, use 'do' for the plural subject and 'does' for the singular subject. Use 'did' when the verb is past simple.
- iii. Write the subject.
- iv. Write the main verb (in base form).
- v. Write the rest of the question.
- vi. Omit the phrase that you are asking about.
- vii. Write a question mark (?).

# **Examples:**

The school boys frequently go to Umm Qais at weekends.

- Where do the school boys usually go at weekends?

iv

- I ii iii (To Umm Qais)
- **How often** do the school boys go to Umm Qais? (Frequently)
- (3) To ask about the subject when there is no auxiliary, use 'who/ what' and omit the phrase of the subject you are asking about.

(who/ what+ verb+ object....)

# **Examples:**

- The policeman assured the kidnapped.

**Who** assured the kidnapped? (The policeman)

- Gaza bombardment forced the Palestinians to leave their shelters.

What forced the Palestinian people to leave their shelters?

(Gaza bombardment)

- (4) (How many, how much, which, and whose) are followed by the noun you are asking about. The auxiliary verb follows that noun, as in:
- This bag is **mine**.

Whose bag is this? (It's mine)

-The red BMW is Ali's.

Which BMW is Ali's? (The red)

- Ali gave Hassan a **lot of money**.

**How much money** did Ali give to Hassan?

- Sali buys **70 balls** a day.

**How many balls** does Sali buy a day?

- I sell **old** coins to the rich people.

Which coins do you sell to the rich people?

- Ahmad is fighting against **the fat guy? Which guy** is Ahmad fighting against?

# 24. Answers and Agreement

#### 24.1 Answers

To answer a Yes/ No question we use two different patterns. We use "Yes+ subject+ auxiliary/ modal" pattern to answer 'Yes/No' questions affirmatively, and we use "No+ subject+ auxiliary/ modal+ not" pattern to answer negatively. Consider the following table:

Yes/ No questions	Answers
Has Hani built a new house?	Yes, he has.
	No, he hasn't.
Can Ali speak English well?	Yes, he can.
	No, he can't.
Is Ali calling his dad on the phone?	Yes, he is.
	No, he isn't.
Does Rami play football?	Yes, he does.
	No, he doesn't.
Do the company employees rarely agree on	Yes, they do.
proposals?	No, they don't.
Did the player compose new songs?	Yes, he did.
	No, he didn't.
Would you go with me?	Yes, I would.
	No, I wouldn't.
Will you turn the tap off?	Yes, I will.
	No, I won't.

#### 24. 2 Answers to statements

# 1. Affirmative agreement.

We use the following pattern to give an affirmative agreement as a reply for affirmative statement:

# 'affirmative statement+ and+ <u>so + auxiliary (be/ do/ have/ modal verb )+ subject'</u>

- I'm happy, and so are you.
- They will work in the lab tomorrow, and so will you.

- A: I'm leaving. B: So am I.
- A: I've a car. B: *So do I*.
- A: Arwa can drive a bike. B: So can Sama.

We use an appropriate form of 'do' in the present simple/ past simple, as in:

- John goes to the school, and so does my brother.
- A: I like cinema. B: **So do I.**
- A: Al-Faisali won. B: So did Al-Ahli.
- A: Rula likes apples. B: So does Asma.
- You can also follow the following pattern to give affirmative agreement:

(affirmative statement+ <u>and+ subject+ auxiliary (be/ do/</u> have/ modal verb)+ too)

# **Examples:**

- I'm happy, and you are too.
- They will work in the lab tomorrow, and you will too.
- John goes to that school, and my brother does too.

## 2. Negative agreement:

We use the following pattern to give a negative agreement as a reply for a negative statement:

'negative statement+ and+ <u>neither + positive auxiliary (be/ do/</u> have/ modal verb) + subject'

- I didn't see Sara this afternoon. Neither did Ali.
- She will not go to the meeting. *Neither will Ashraf*.
- The boss isn't at the party. *Neither is the assistant*.
- John didn't call Sami. Neither did Ali.
- Rami doesn't speak French. Neither does Haifa.
- You can also follow the following pattern to give a negative agreement:

'negative statement+ <u>and+ subject + negative auxiliary+ either'</u>

- I didn't see Sara this afternoon, <u>and Ali didn't either</u>.
  She will not go to the meeting, <u>and Ashraf will not either.</u>

#### Exercise (53)

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of either or neither.

- 1. The boys shouldn't take the medicine, and .....should the girls.
- 2. We don't plan to join the team, and .....do they.
- 3. They won't have to work on weekends, and she won't .....
- 4. I can't stand listening to pop music, and she can't.....

#### Exercise (54)

Supply the correct form of the missing verb.

- 1. The boys aren't happy with the programme, and neither....the girls.
- 2. We can't study in the library, and they ....either.
- 3. He didn't know the answer and neither....I.

#### Exercise (55)

Correct the underlined errors, so that the questions sound perfect.

- 1. Rula doesn't drink milk, doesn't she?
- 2. Where can solve the puzzle? Sami
- 3. Why is Hani? At home.
- 4. How far money do you have? 12,000 US.\$

## Exercise (56)

Make wh-questions for the following statement so that the underlined phrases answer them.

1.	We want some food to eat.
Wh	10
2.	McCain gave me a bottle of coke
Wh	nat?
3.	A picture fell on the floor.
	 nat?

4. She saw me <u>yesterday</u> .
When?
5. I live in <u>Liverpool</u> .
Where?
6. Hashim is 20 years old.
How old?
7. I met the teacher in Manchester.
Whom?
8. Mohammad was born in Lisbon.
?
9. I have a sandwich in my luggage.
?
10. Ahmad can't leave because his mother is dying.
?
11. This is Anne's purse.
?
12. I can't figure out the chapter written in French.
?
Exercise (57):
Add tag questions and give the right responses where necessary
1. Mohammad came yesterday, didn't he?
Yes, he did.
2. I don't live in a palace,?
No,
3. Ahmad would like to have some coffee,?
4. This is Anne's purse,?
5. You have scanned the letter,?
Yes, I have.
6. They couldn't do the exercise, could they?
•••••

#### Exercise (58) Select the correct answer: You love Samia, .....? a. don't you b. do you c.aren't you 2. Open that window, .....? a. will you b. won't you c. don't you 3. .....does your dad live? In Munich a. Where b. When c. Who 4. I'm doing my homework this evening. a. So am I b. Neither am I c. So I am 5. I'm not going out tomorrow. a. Neither am I b. So am I c. So I am Exercise (59) Select the best answer: ......Ali and Ahmad studying at the moment? c. Were a. Is b. Are .....you driving fast to reach the top? 2. a. Will b. Were c. Is 3. ......Katrina cut her finger yet? b. Had a. Has c. Have Must Basil.....his mum? 4. a. call b. calls c. called 5. ......Abdelhadi leave his house yesterday? a. Didn't b. Don't c. Doesn't Haitham is an officer, .....? 6. a. mustn't he b. is he c. isn't he She broke the new chair, didn't she?.... 7. Yes, she b. Yes, she didn't c. No, she didn't a. did 8. .....are you doing? I'm eating pizza. a. What b. Who c. When

# Exercise (60)

Finish these sentences by adding a tag question with the correct form of the verb and the subject pronoun.

- 1. You're going to Paris next year,....?
- 2. Harry signed the petition,....?
- 3. There is a final test,....?
- 4. She's been studying French for 3 years,....?
- 5. He should see the dentist,....?
- 6. You can play tennis today,....?

# 25. Passive voice

"When I was in that market once, I saw a stranger who suddenly pushed the boy who used to work there. That happened after a dispute about a can... You know that great attention must be paid in the food canning. Care is undoubtedly required in the canning of both fruit and meet. For example, for maximum nutritional value, only the freshest food should be canned..."

#### 25.1 Definition

Passive voice is used when the agent is not known or less important than the occurrence. We can also use it when we talk about processes. However, the one who does the action may appear in 'by....' Phrase or may be omitted.

**Note:** To change a sentence from active to passive the sentence must have an object.

In sentences written in active voice, the subject acts and performs the action that is expressed in the verb, as in:

(1) **A stranger** pushed the boy.

'A stranger' is the subject who performed the pushing. But in sentences written in the passive voice, the subject is acted upon and it is the recipient of the action of the verb as well, as in:

(2) **The boy** was pushed by a stranger.

'The boy' is the receiver of the 'push' and so 'push' is in the passive voice. One more example is:

(3) Mary was kicked by Ali.

'Mary' is the receiver of the 'kick' and so 'Kick' is in the passive voice.

- 25.2 Steps for changing a sentence from active into passive:
  - a. Place the object of the active sentence at the beginning of the passive sentence.

- b. Follow the following changes shown in the table, which basically evolve around two steps:
  - If the active sentence has any auxiliary, place it after the new subject of the passive sentence, paying attention to the subject- verb agreement.
  - Place the main verb that is in the active sentence after the auxiliary "in the past participle form".
- \* **Tense**: Present simple
- \* Form of the change required: (object+ is/ am/ are+ p.p) 'is' for singular objects; 'are' for plural objects; 'am' for 'I')

**Active**: An earthquake destroys a great deal of property every year. **Passive**: A great deal of property is destroyed by an earthquake every year.

- <u>Sam drinks tea every morning.</u> - **Tea is drunk** every morning.

s v o

- <u>Sam eats apples</u> first. - **Apples** are eaten first.

s v o

\* Tense: past simple

\* Form of the change required: (object+ was/ were + p.p) 'was' for sing. objects, 'were' for plural objects

Active: A tsunami destroyed fifty thousand buildings.

Passive: Fifty thousand buildings were destroyed by a tsunami

- <u>Muna bought a bike yesterday.</u> - **A bike was bought** yesterday.

S V 0

Martin aquabt two thiowas

- Martin caught two thieves. - Two thieves were caught.

\* Form of the change required: (object+ is/ are/ am+ being + p.p)

**Active**: The committee is discussing new proposals.

**Passive**: New proposals are being discussed by the committee.

<sup>\*</sup> Tense: present progressive

- Nancy is writing a letter.	- A letter is being written.
s v o	
- Sylvie is painting three sketches.	- Three sketches are being painted.
s v o	
* Tense: past progressive	
* Form of the change required: (o	hiect + was/ were + heing + n n)
Form of the change required.	bject+ was/ were+ being+ p.p/
A atime. The staff was considering	
Active: The staff was considering	•
Passive: New plans were being con	•
- Ali was building a house	- A house was being built.
S V O	
- Ali was helping some people.	- Some people were being helped.
S V O	
* Tense: present perfect	
* Form of the change required: (o	biect+ has/ have+ been+ p.p)
	ojesti zami za ostan pipi
Active: The government has order	red new weapons
Passive: New weapons have been	•
•	•
- <u>Suzan</u> <u>has killed</u> <u>a kidnapper</u> .	- A kidnapper has been killed.
S V O	75 1 1 1 4
- <u>Suzan</u> <u>has thrown</u> <u>two boxes.</u>	- Two boxes have been thrown.
S V O	
* Tense: past perfect	
* Form of the change required: (o	bject+ had+ been+ p.p)
Active: The army had ordered new	missile systems.
Passive: New missile systems had	
- <u>Sofia had sold a farm</u> .	- A farm had been sold.
S V O	11 IMI IIMW NOVII DUIM.
- <u>Sofia had stolen some beds.</u>	- Some beds had been stolen.
	- Some Deus Hau Deen stoien.
S V O	

- \* Modals \* Form of the change required: (object+ modal verb+ be+ p.p) **Active**: The family doctor should attend the clinic today. **Passive**: The clinic should be attended by the family doctor today. - Jordan will grow rice. - Rice will be grown. - <u>Salma can freeze two chickens</u>. - **Two chickens can be frozen**. (modals perfect) (modal+ have+ been+ p.p) - You should have called the boss. - The boss should have been called. \* be+ to infinitive \* Form of the change required: (object+ be+ to +be +pp) -Phillip is to take a notebook. - A notebook is to be taken. to-inf - We are to take some notes. - Some notes are to be taken. to-inf 0 (passive infinitive) -You have to order new books soon. - New books have to be ordered soon. to inf S \* With direct/indirect object - Ali gave Sami a gift. - Sami was given a gift. s v DO IO - Riyad has offered a job for Sam. - A job has been offered for Jam. DO IO V - Ali gave a gift to Sami. - A gift was given to Sami.
- **c.** As we focus on the occurrence in passive sentences, writing the agent/ who does the action is optional. However, you can use the form (by+ the doer) to show the agent- mentioning the name or the object form of pronoun.

DO IO

s v

The following changes happen to the pronouns preceded by 'by':

Subject	Object
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
they	them

For example: the pronoun 'he' in the active sentence **'He** killed the lion' becomes 'him' in passive voice 'The lion was killed **by him'**. As in:

- Sam drinks tea daily. (Active)

Tea is drunk every day by Sam. (Passive)

- She is writing a story. (Active) A story is being written **by her**. (Passive)

- Phillip is to take notes. (Active)

Notes are to be taken by Phillip. (Passive)

## 25.3 Have/ get something done

**a.** Use 'have' in a passive pattern to mean that an arrangement made for someone to do something for you as a professional service.

# **Examples:**

- I *had the furniture delivered*. (someone else delivered the furniture, not myself)
- Sam, you should have that video fixed.

( it means by the technician)

- Alice *had a new house built*. (it means by specialists)
- I *had my car stolen*. (it means by someone else)

- **b.** We use '*get*' in a passive pattern to mean exactly what 'have' means.
  - I must get the furniture delivered.
  - I got that video repaired.
  - I'm going to get my eyes tested.
  - She is *getting her house decorated*.

# Exercise (61)

Rewrite the following sentences in passive voice so that the new sentences give the same meaning of the given.

1.	My students will have read the book by noon time, tomorrow.
	The bookby my students.
2.	Two horses were pulling the wagon.
	The wagon
3.	Asma has smashed three windows.
4	by Asma.
4.	Aramex sends 2000 boxes of clothes a monthby Aramex
5	Shakespeare wrote Macbeth.
٠.	
6.	She had better return this book before Sunday.
_	by her.
5.	They should have sent this package.
8	The engineer has performed the project successfully.
0.	The project
9.	The old man is cutting the trees.
	by the old man.
10.	Farmers don't grow coffee in Jordan.
11	Coffee
11.	The new house
12.	You ought to sign this document.
	This document
13.	They dig wells to get fresh water.
1.4	Wells
14.	She let me in.
15.	She spent all the salary on clothes
	All the salary

16.	People call Ali 'the smuggler'.
	Ali

#### Exercise (62)

# A: Study the following pair of sentences and answer the question below.

- a. I must translate this study into Arabic.
- b. I must have this study translated into Arabic.

Which sentence indicates that the speaker will ask someone to translate the study?.....

# B: Study the following pair of sentences and answer the question below.

- a. I've taken my shirt to be shortened.
- b. I've shortened my shirt.

Which sentence indicates that the tailor/ not the speaker has shortened the shirt. .....

### C: Choose the right answer.

- 1. The box.....today. (must be/ must be delivered/ must deliver)
- 2. The report......two days ago. (wrote/ was written/ were written)
- 3. This food ......well. (is cooked/ are cooked/ cook)

# D: Complete these sentences using the passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1. At present, plastic bags ......(see: present simple) as unnecessary evil.
- 2. Bottles that ......(throw away: present perfect) often end up littering the streets.

# 26. Direct and Indirect Speech

#### 26.1 Definition

Direct speech is the reporting of speech by repeating exactly the speaker's words, as in:

- 'Peter said, "I'm tired of Arab meetings"
- 'John said, "He is eating an apple"

In direct speech quotation marks are placed at the beginning and end of direct speech piece. We place a comma before the first inverted comma/ quotation marks. (after Peter said/ John asked, etc.).

**Indirect/** reported speech is reporting what someone has said without using the actual words of the speaker. In reported speech there is usually an introductory verbs and a subordinate 'that' clause, as in:

- He said that he was eating apple.

'Said' is an introductory verb, and that he was eating apple is a subordinate 'that' clause.

When you make a change from direct to indirect speech, the pronouns, adverbs of time and place, and tenses are changed and you remove the commas.

### **Consider the following sentences:**

- Samia to Jamil: "My sister is going to Yemen." Samia told Jamil that **her sister was going to Yemen**.
- Rashid to Ali: "My cousin lives in Jerash."
  Rashid told Ali that **his cousin lived in Jerash**.
- Amal to Samia: "Kawthar is pleased about the new mission." Amal told Samia that **Kawthar was pleased about the new mission**.

# 26.2 Changing the direct speech into indirect speech

Those are the changes you should follow when changing direct speech into indirect speech:

**Changing pronouns** 

26.2.1 <u>Changing statements</u>. When you change a statement into indirect speech you do the following changes on pronouns, verbs and adverbs changes when dealing with statements:

**Changing verbs** 

0				
From	To		From	To
I	he/ she/ it	-prese	ent simple	-past simple
we you	they I/ we		simple perfect	-past perfect/ past simple -past perfect
my	his/ her	-prese	ent progressive	-past progressive
our	their	-past	progressive	-past perfect progressive
it	it	-prese	ent perfect	-past perfect
you (obj)	me/ us	-must		-had to
me us	him/ her them	-could would	d, might, ought to,	-(no changes)
		-futur	e, e.g. will, can	-conditional: would, could
Changing adverbs and adjectives				
From			To	
today			that day	
tomorrow		the next day		
yesterday		the day before		
next (week)		the following (week)		
this (month)		that (month)		
these			those	

1	.1
here	there
now	then
ago	before
tomorrow morning	the following morning
yesterday evening	the evening before

### **Examples:**

He said, "I study biology." He said (that) he studied biology.

He said, "I studied biology." He said (that) he had studied biology.

He said, "I'm studying biology." He said he was studying biology.

He said, "I was studying physics at 8 o'clock." He said he had been studying physics at 8 o'clock.

He said, "I have studied biology." He said he had studied biology.

He said, "I must study biology." He said he had to study biology.

He said, "I might study biology." He said he might study biology.

He said, "I will study biology." He said he would study biology.

# 26.2.2 Changing questions. Follow the steps below to change a question into indirect speech:

Yes/ no questions	Wh- questions	
1. Use the introductory verb (asked	1. Use the introductory verb, <i>e.g.</i>	
for example).	asked.	
2. Add: whether or if.	2. Write the <b>wh</b> - question <b>word</b> , e.g.	
3. Write the <b>subject</b> .	What/where, etc.	
4. Do the statement changes.	3. Do the statement changes after the	
	rearrangement of the words order to	
	become as it was in the statement	
	order (S+ V).	
	4. Omit the question mark (?).	

- He asked, "Are you going home?"

He asked if/ whether I was going home.

But: -"Could you recommend me a good book on physics?" (polite request) She asked me **to recommend** her a good book on physics.

He asked, "when does Ali leave?" He asked when Ali left.

### **26.2.3** Consider how to form indirect command:

Changes in commands	Changes when 'Let's' is used
<ol> <li>Use the introductory verb, e.g. ordered</li> <li>Add (to) before the imperative verb.</li> <li>When 'don't' is used, add 'not' before 'to'.</li> </ol>	Use either of the following forms: - suggested+ verb+ ing - suggested+ that+ S+ should+ verb (base form)

Examples:

-He said, "stop there." He told me to stop there.

-He said, "don't stop there." He told me not to stop there.

-"If I were you, I would leave Sami advised me to leave the army.

The army."

-"Could you give me a pen?" Ali asked me to give him a pen.

-He said "let's go." He suggested going. (or) He suggested that we should go.

eise (63) ge the following sentences into reported speech.
1. 'The lecturer, 'we have a meeting next week.' The lecturer said that
2. 'Lock the door', my mum to me.  My mum ordered me
3. 'Have you arrived yet?' She asked me
4. 'How many copies do you sell?' I asked Ali
5. 'Your story is very good.' Rabab told Majedeh that
6. Alia: 'I like your new camera.' Alia told Ziad (that)
7. Ibrahim: 'My parents are taking us to India.' Ibrahim said (that)
8. 'Where is my jacket?' My friend asked me
9. 'We are working here to pay for our new car.' My parents told me

'Yesterday I was in bed with a tempreture.'
'If I were you, I wouldn't leave school.' nad advised Sami
'Could you recommend me a good book on physics.

# 27. Relative/ adjective clauses

A relative/ adjective clause is a dependent clause that modifies a noun/ or pronoun and it is used to give additional information about that particular noun. A relative clause follows the noun it refers to.

- The book *that is on the table* is well organized.
- "that is on the table" is the relative clause.
- The lady *whom Rakan admires* is Asma.
- "whom Rakan admires" is the relative clause.
- The man who set up this plan is clever.

# 27.1 Using 'who', 'which' and 'that' as subject pronouns:

<b>Pronouns</b>	(1) Examples	(2) The base sentences
Who	I met the lady <u>who</u> <u>supported me</u> .	I met the lady. The lady supported me.
Which	The pen which is there is mine.	The pen is mine. It is there

**Note:** 'that' is used instead of 'who' and 'which'.

**Note:** 'who' is used for people, whereas 'which' is used for things.

# 27.2 Using 'who(m)', 'which' and 'that' as object pronouns:

<b>Pronouns</b>	(1) Examples	(2) The base sentences
Whom	The lady whom I met was Rana.	I met the lady. The lady
		was Rana.
Which	The pen which I bought was good.	I bought a pen. The pen
		was good.
Whom	She is the lady whom I told you	She is the lady. I told you
	<u>about</u> .	a bout her.
Which	The music which we listened to	We listened to music
	yesterday wasn't good.	yesterday. It wasn't good.

<sup>&</sup>quot;who set up this plan" is the relative clause.

**Note:** 'whom' is used for people.

**Note:** 'whom' and 'which' can be omitted when they refer to an object.

- The lady whom I met was Rana.

The lady I met was Rana.

- The pen which I bought was good.

The pen I bought was good.

- She is the lady **whom** I told you about.

She is the lady I told you about.

- The music **which** we listened to yesterday wasn't good. The music we listened to yesterday wasn't good.

- The lady whom/ that I dislike is my ex-wife.

The lady I dislike is my ex-wife.

- The pen which/ that I borrowed was Ali's.

The pen I borrowed was Ali's.

### 27.3 Whose, Where and When

<b>Pronouns</b>	(1) Examples	(2) The base sentence
Whose	I met the lady whose van was	I met the lady. Her
	<u>damaged</u> .	van was damaged.
Where	- The villa <i>where I live</i> is	I live in that villa. The
	nice.	villa is nice.
When	- I will never forget the time	I will never forget that
	when you left me behind.	time. You left me
		behind at that time.

#### 27.4 Restrictive and non-restrictive relative/ adjective clause:

A restrictive clause gives essential information about a noun, and such information cannot be deleted, as in:

1. Shadi who <u>came late to the lesson</u> was rebuked by the teacher.

Restrictive clause

But a non-restrictive clause gives additional information that can be deleted (optional relative clause). It usually comes between commas, as in:

2. Shadi, <u>who is my best friend</u>, was rebuked by the teacher.

Non-restrictive clause

# **More examples:**

- Objects that don't float to the surface should be sold.

# **Restrictive clause**

- My van, which is very large, consumes too much gas.

# Non-restrictive clause

#### Exercise (64)

Identify the relative clause in each sentence.

- 1. The meeting which I held was great.

  Adjective clause: Which I held
- 2. I know the man whose bike was stolen.

  Adjective clause:.....
- 3. The woman who told me the truth is looking at you right now. Adjective clause:.....
- 4. The villa where I live is by the upper lake.

  Adjective clause:.....

#### Exercise (65)

Use (where, which, who, when, whose, or whom) to fill in the blanks.

- 1. I'll never forget the day......I met you.
- 2. The town .....he lives is the old town.
- 3. The student......composition I have already read is excellent.
- 4. George W. Bush was the US president......I told you about.
- 5. The programme......we saw last night was thrilling.
- 6. The girl ......dropped the can was punished severely.

#### Exercise (66)

Combine the following into one sentence. Make relative clauses by using the relative pronouns in brackets.

- 1. Do you know the man? The man lives in the blue building. **(who)**
- 2. The coach gave me enough support. I called him. (whom)
- 3. The building was hit by missile. We lived in that building. **(where)**

# 28. Prepositions

# 28.1 Prepositions of Place (at, in, and on)

Prepositions of place are used to show the positions of people and things. We say:

**On** 25, june, 2009 I met Sami **at** the airport.

# In:

<u>111</u> •		
	Examples	
Enclosed space;	in a car, in a taxi, in a helicopter, in a	
Something around you	boat, in a lift, in a box, in a pocket, in a wallet, in a building, in an office, in the room, in the Kitchen, in the garden, in the bathroom	
Streets	in Dallas street, in Oxford street	
Countries, cities, towns and villages	in Paris, in Moscow, in New York in Jordan	
With ' arrive'	arrive in London	
Weather	in the rain, in the snow, in the fog	
Miscellaneous common phrases	in the garden, in the sky, in the newspaper, in a row, in bed, in a book, in the photo, in the middle, in the back of (a car), in the front of, in back of, in front of	

# <u>At</u>: It is used with points of place, street numbers and specific places.

Pitter	
	Examples
Points	at the corner, at the bus stop, at the door, at the
	top of (the page), at the end of (something), at
	the cross roads, at the roundabout, at the
	bottom, at the reception, at the traffic lights

Street numbers	at 17 oxford street
Speed	at a speed of 50 k/h
Specific place	at Heathrow airport, at the cinema, at the pub, at Fred's house
Miscellaneous of common phrases	at home, at work, at university, at school, at college, at the party, at the meeting, at the football match,

# On: on is used with:

	Examples	
Surface/ touching	on the wall, on the ceiling, on the floor,	
part of something	on the carpet, on the cover of the book,	
	(a sign) on the wall, on the back of an	
	envelope	
Directions	on the left, on the right, on the far side	
To mean 'by means of something'	on the phone, on the T.V	
Levels of a building/	on the first floor, on the top floor	
On+ floor	-	
Parts of the body	on my foot, on his leg, on my left arm	
Some types of	on a bus, on a horse	
transport		
Miscellaneous of	on this page, on the screen, on the beach	
common phrases		

# 28.2 Prepositions of Time (at, in, and on)

Prepositions of time are used to show the time of events and activities.

# At:

	Examples	
Precise time	at 5 o'clock, at noon, at midnight	
	at night, at dawn, at lunch time	

	at sunrise, at sunset, at bed time at the moment, at the weekend at the start of June, at present at the same time
With age	at the age of 17
Hours	at 6: 30
Calendar seasons	at Christmas, at Easter
With meals	at lunch, at breakfast, at dinner

<u>In</u>:

	Examples
Months	in August, in April
Years	in 1996, in 2000, in the 1980
Parts of the day	in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
Seasons	in spring, in summer
Long periods	in 7 months, in the ice age, in the future, in two weeks in two days, in three months
Centuries	in the 20 the century
To refer to the time something takes to be completed	-I will finish my paper in 10 minutesI did the crossword in half an hour.

On:

	Examples	
Days	on Monday/ Saturday/ Friday, etc.	
A day of the month	on 17 February, on 21 march 1968	
Days of holiday	on your birthday, on independence day, on Christmas day	
Particular time of a day	on Saturday evening, on Thursday morning	
Miscellaneous of common phrases	on arrival, on your return	

**28. 3 Other prepositions:** after, from...to, to, in time, on time, near between, among, next to, opposite, in front of, in the front of, in back of, in the back of, for and since.

### ✓ 'After

**After:** is generally used to mean later than, as in:

Ann was happy **after** she bought a car.

Ann looked weird after crying for two hours.

However 'after' has other meanings, including:

Meaning	behind	chase	to have the same name of another's
Examples	Ahmad, lock the gate after you, please.	The bear was after Asma.	Alia is named after his grandmother.

<sup>✓ &#</sup>x27;From.....to/ until/ till' defines the beginning and end of a period, as in :

The *British Council* will be closed **from 18<sup>th</sup> July to 15<sup>th</sup> August**.

- ✓ 'To' is used to refer to a movement toward something, as in:
  - Ahmad is cycling to Paris to visit his mother.
  - I went to Surrey to meet Harith.

It also means 'against as in: 'The score is 7 to 4.'

# We use 'to' with the following words:

according to	liable to	hard to
give to	prefer to	like to
urge to	beg to	manage to
decide to	eager to	speak to
due to	used to	send to

### ✓ In time, On time:

'In time' means 'before/ not late', e.g.:

I arrived **in time** for the 09:00 train.

'On time' means 'exactly at the arranged time', e.g.:

My train left **on time**. (Exactly at 9 o'clock/ not after or before)

**'Between'** is used with two people/ things, and it can be used with more than two when the number is definite, as in:

- 1. I divided the portion **between** *Alfred and Helen*.
- 2. I sat between Ali, Ahmad, Yousef and Samia.
- ✓ 'Among' is used with more than two people/ things and with indefinite number of people/ things, as in:
   I slept among strange people.

#### ✓ 'Next to'

It means 'right beside', as in 'look at that picture which is **next** to the blue curtain. It is excellent'.

# ✓ 'With'

It means 'along with', and 'using something- the how'. As in:

- The British fought with the Germans.
- Salim hit her with a hammer.

## We use 'with' with the following words:

satisfied with	familiar with	annoyed with
fill with	consult with	supply with
agree with	endowed with	with confidence
compare with	pleasesd with	covered with

# ✓ 'Opposite'

It means 'facing something/ across from', as in:

A: I live in that building. B: Which one?

A: The building **opposite** to the green grand store.

B: I see. They're facing each other.

#### ✓ 'In front of'

It means a head, as in 'Yousef is sitting in front of Al.

#### ✓ 'In the front of'

It means 'in the front part of something/ from inside', as in 'The model is **in the front of** the classroom'.

## ✓ 'In back of'

It means 'behind', as in 'The car is **in back of** my house'.

#### ✓ In the back of'

It means 'in the rear part of something', as in 'The teacher is standing in the back of the auditorium'.

- ✓ 'For' is used to indicate to the destination you are going toward. It is also used to express how long an action lasts (length of period), as in:
- I'm flying **for** a forum that will be held in Chelsea.
- I have taught English for seven years.
- I'll find a job **for** you.
- ✓ 'Since' is used to refer to the start point of an action, as in:
- I have been teaching English since 1987.

- ✓ 'Out of' means the opposite of 'into', as in: 'He walked out of the room.'
- 28.4 Preposition+ noun (e.g. in my opinion). There are some nouns that are usually used preceded by prepositions; these include:

on holiday	on a journey	on business	in cash
by cheque	in pen	on television	on the phone
for sale	on the whole	in advance	up to date
on purpose	by chance	by mistake	in my opinion
at a high speed	at first sight	at the invitation of	in charge of
in honor of	on the occasion	of	with confidence
by+ transport means: by taxi/		on foot (means walki	ng)
bus/ train/ ship/ sea/ plane/ air			

bus/ train/ ship/ sea/ plane/ air

# 28.5 Verb+ Preposition (prepositional verbs), as in:

'graduate from', 'spend on' and 'supply with'. Here are some common prepositional verbs:

wait for	belong to	agree with	apply for
apologize for	believe in	care about	deal with
concentrate on	suffer from	talk about	consist of
blame for	provide with	take care of	laugh at
hide from	blame for	cope with	comment on
rely on	depend on	contribute to	stare at
look forward to	congratulate on	take advantage of	dream of/ about
participate in	forget about	vote for	object to
count on	thank for	graduate from	compete with
furnish with	interfere with	mix with	pay for
prevent from	recover from	sit at (the table)	sit in (arm chair)
decide on	detract from	engage in	escape from

# 28.6 Adjectives+ prepositions (e.g. mad at).

accustomed to	afraid of	mad at	interested in
expert in	different from	capable of	fond of
rich in	guilty of	detrimental to	partial to

tired of/ from	finished with	absent from	dull of
acquainted with	accused of	innocent of	angry at
jealous of	aware of	bored with	known for
committed to	upset with	dedicated to	discriminated against
content with	proud of	married to	different from
composed of	dressed in	easy for	empty of
full of	superior to	born in	kind to

#### Exercise (67)

Put in the preposition: in, on or at.

- 1. Gallagher's room is.....the third floor.
- 2. I saw Julia Robert holding a parrot.....her hand.
- 3. I'll meet you ......the airport.
- 4. There are 23 seats .....the classroom.

## Exercise (68)

Add the correct preposition that goes with the verb, adjective, or noun in every sentence:

- 1. I'm afraid......parachuting. I hate to jump from high places.
- 2. Orange is rich.....vitamin (c).
- 3. People in Congo suffer..... civil war.
- 4. Don't write.....pen.
- 5. When you decide to participate in the parliamentary elections, please tell me...... advance.
- 6. My firm-report will be declared ...... the radio.
- 7. Water consists..... oxygen and hydrogen.
- 8. You are well-trained. That is why I can rely.....you.
- 9. I'll be out for few hours. Could you take care.....my baby.
- 10. I've run my website......2001.(since/ for)
- 11. He's been there .....over half an hour. (since/ for)
- 12. He was sitting.....the table. (in/at)
- 13. We went to the station.....taxi. (on/by)
- 14. I was born ...... Holland. (in/on)
- 15. I'm proud.....my king. (of/ at)
- 16. The child is afraid.....the dark room. (of/by)
- 17. You're accused ......smuggling. (of/by)
- 18. He speaks French ......confidence. (with/ from)
- 19. He spent a lot of money ..... cassettes. (on/ at)
- 20. Are you good .....physics? (at/on)

# 29. Emphasis and Hedging

# 29.1 Emphasis

There are many ways for emphasizing a part of a sentence. The following are the most common styles especially when writing an essay because they help to have essays of a wide range of grammar.

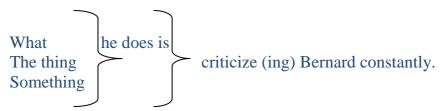
# 1. Structures which add emphasis (cleft sentences):

a. I love Jolie's personality. (base sentence)



# b. Cleft sentence, for example: <u>It is Jolie's personality that I love.</u>

c. He criticizes Bernard constantly. (base sentence)



d. He criticized Bernard constantly. (base sentence)



- **2. Negative inversion:** Certain negative expressions can be put at the beginning of a sentence for emphasis, as in:
  - (never, rarely, not only, scarcely, seldom, etc.). Examples:
    - I'll never forget the day when I first met her.
      - Never will I forget the day when I first met her.
    - People rarely fall in love at first sight.
       Rarely do people fall in love at first sight.
- 3. Emphatic do/ does/ did:
  - Finally, I did find the keys.

(Finally, I found the keys.)

- I do like Mrs. Bonnet.

(I like Mrs. Bonnet.)

- She does love her dad.

(She loves her dad.)

### **29.2** Hedging (Distancing the Facts)

These are the ways of how you can give information putting distance between yourself, as a speaker, and the facts:

### 1. Passive constructions.

Look at these sentences:

- They say Hanna works in the hotel.
- People assume Kate is wasting her time with Angelina.
- Everyone thought Mugabe had made his fortune in tobacco.

These sentences can be expressed in the passive in two ways, beginning with 'it' or the 'name/pronoun':

- It is said that Hanna works in the hotel.
- **It is assumed that** Kate is wasting her time with Angelina.
- It was thought that Mugabe had made his fortune in Tobacco Company.

(You can use phrases like: it is believed that/ it is expected/ it is alleged/ it is reported/ etc.); (or)

- Hanna/ He is said to work in the bar.
- Kate/She is assumed to be wasting her time with

Angelina.

- **Mugabe/He was thought to** have made his fortune in Tobacco Company.
- 2. Seem and appear.
  - He **appears to have** scanned my family photos.
  - The Sunday **seems to have** found the required details from reliable sources.
  - Benjamin's declaration seems to be more factual.
  - **It appears that** the president dealt with the circumstances confidently.

### Exercise (69)

Rewrite these sentences to make them more emphatic.

1.	Love changes the course of your life.
2.	She always disagrees with me.
3.	I admire Arthur's courage.
4.	I've never been humiliated in my life.

# **30. Punctuation Marks; and Capitalization**

#### 30.1 Punctuation marks.

Punctuation marks are symbols used in punctuating a written text including: full stop, comma, question mark, colon, exclamation mark, apostrophe, etc.

# **<u>Full stop.</u>** It is a small dot (.) whose main use is:

1. To indicate the end of a sentence which is not a question or an exclamation, as in:

Miller is really embarrassed.

Rebecca is studying Applied Linguistics.

2. At the end of an abbreviation that involves the first few letters of a word, as in:

Feb. / Jan. / Aug. / Tue. /etc. / Mr.

- 3. In decimal fractions, as in "3.5 feet".
- 4. At the end of a reported/ indirect sentence, as in: He promised that he would help her.

### **Comma** (,). It is mainly used:

- 1. Between individual items in a list of three or more items (all but the last and the one before the last), for example:
  - I like football, tennis, basketball and table tennis.
  - I can speak English, Arabic and French.
- 2. To distinguish a non-restrictive from a restrictive relative clause, as in:
  - My father, who is Irish, is smart.
- 3. After the subordinate clause when it precedes the main clause, as in:

- Although Alia was sick, she went to school.
- 4. To separate a question tag, as in "It is hot, isn't it?"
- 5. Before a quotation, as in:
  - I boldly cried out, 'what a bad day!'
- 6. In numbers of four or more figures, to separate each group of three consecutive figures, starting from the right, as in:
  - (11,234,657).
- 7. After some introductory elements: Yes,/ No,/ Oh, .
- 8. To separate a series of adjectives:
  - We had to carry out a long, demanding and challenging march in Wales.
- 9. After adverbial clauses when coming at the beginning of a sentence, for example:
  - While he was climbing the mountain, Sam broke his leg.
- 10. After participial phrases:
  - Washing his car, Fred had sprained ankle.
- 11. To separate items in dates:
  - I was born on August 6, 1980.
- 12. After the salutation of the letter and after the closing of the letter:

Dear Sam,

Yours sincerely,

13. After words like:

For example,

Moreover,

**Note:** Words used in pairs are considered one item in a series, and in this case a comma is placed after the item before the last, for example:

For dinner I prepared salad, cake, fish and chips, and coffee.

**Question mark (?).** It is placed at the end of a question/interrogative sentence, as in:

- Who is she?
- What did you say?

## **Colon (:)**. It is used:

- 1. To introduce a list of items, as in:
- I have a list of what we need for lunch: potatoes, tomatoes, garlic and bread.
- 2. In numerals as in "it is 7:30 pm".
- 3. To explain and clarify what has gone before it, as in:
- I have some good news: AlZamalik won the championship.
- 4. Before a quotation, as in:
  - The godfather wrote these words: I owe you a grand.

## **Exclamation mark (!).**

- 1. It is used after an exclamatory word, phrase, or a sentence expressing absurdity, contempt, emotion, enthusiasm, sorrow, a wish, or a wonder, as in:
  - What a sunny day!
  - What a beautiful lady!
  - Alas!
  - How elegant this man is!
- 2. Used at the end of strong imperatives, for example: Shut up!

## **Apostrophe (').** It is used: :

- 1. To show the possession case, as in 'This is **John's** book.
- 2. To show omission, as in '**John's** angry.' which is the short form of '**John is** angry.'

Do not= **don't**, is not= **isn't**, etc.

## Semicolon (;).

- 1. It is mainly used between clauses that are not joined by any form of conjunction, as in:
- We had a wonderful holiday; sadly they didn't.
- 2. It is also used to form subsets in a long list of names so that the said list seems less complex, as in:
- He has applied to The Guardian in London; The Mail in Toronto; AlRai in Jordan.
- 3. It is sometimes used before 'however, nevertheless, hence, etc.', as in:
- It is freezing; *nevertheless*, he'll go out.

## The colon (:) is used:

1. Before a list of items. For example,

The car we bought is spacious enough for everything: suitcases, fishing gear, baskets and clothes.

2. Between the hour and the minutes when writing the time (7:30).

#### The dash (-). It is used to mean 'namely, in other words'.

The commandant was authorized to prevent the strike- he could have stopped it.

#### 30.2 Capitalization.

Capitalization is a must in specific cases in English. Thus, special attention should be paid to this when writing a text or, even, a single sentence:

- 1. Initial letter of proper nouns, for example: Ahmad, Jordan, Cairo, The Middle East and New York.
- 2. Initial letter of days of the week, and months, for example: Saturday, Sunday, May, etc.
- 3. The first word in the sentence, for example: **Ruling** a state isn't easy.
- 4. Initial letter of titles, as in: Mr., Dr., Miss, General, President, etc.

- 5. The first word of a quotation: He says, "**Your** soldiers are really idle."
- 6. The pronoun 'I'.I swiftly and carefully reacted to the accident report.
- 7. Initial letter of names of nationalities, for example: Egyptian, Portuguese, Iranian, Polish, German, Greek, Dutch, etc.
- 8. Organizations, institutions, firms and governmental bodies, for example:

  The General Assembly, United Nations, the Congress, the Ministry of Health, etc.
- 9. The first word in the titles of books, poems, movies and works of art:

Washington Post, the Guardian, War and Peace, Monaliza, etc.

# 31. Redundancy

A redundant part of a sentence is where some information is unnecessarily repeated. It is necessary to learn which word/ or part of the sentence should be crossed out to make a sentence sound correct. The following is a list of words that students usually tend to use making a sentence redundant. Consider the following words:

#### Reason...because

The <u>reason</u> I want to borrow some money is that <u>because</u> I want to by a new house. (incorrect)

The <u>reason</u> I want to borrow some money is that I want to by a new house. (correct)

## Repeat again

Mary <u>repeated</u> the question <u>again</u>. (incorrect) Mary <u>repeated</u> the question. (correct)

#### **New innovations**

We should come up with <u>new innovations</u> to improve our way of living. (incorrect)

We should come up with <u>innovations</u> to improve our way of living. (correct)

#### Join together

My father asked me to join the team <u>together</u>. (incorrect) My father asked me to join the team. (correct)

#### **Sufficient enough**

We have <u>sufficient enough</u> money. (incorrect) We have <u>sufficient</u> money. (correct) We have <u>enough</u> money. (correct)

#### Return back

I <u>returned back</u> last night. (incorrect) I returned last night. (correct)

### **Progress forward**

The Israeli-Palestinian peace talks <u>progressed forward</u>. (incorrect) The Israeli-Palestinian peace talks progressed. (correct)

#### **Advance forward**

The army <u>advanced forward</u> after the main battle. (incorrect) The army advanced after the main battle. (correct)

#### **Proceed forward**

The teacher <u>proceeded forward</u> to discuss the puzzle. (incorrect) The teacher proceeded to discuss the puzzle. (correct)

#### Same identical

The twins have the <u>same identical</u> birthmarks. (incorrect) The twins have <u>identical</u> birthmarks. (correct)

#### Two twins

My brother wants to play with the <u>two twins</u>. (incorrect) My brother wants to play with the twins. (correct)

#### Two halves

I split the group into <u>two halves</u>. (incorrect) I split the group into <u>halves</u>. (correct)

#### The time when

It is the time when I'll meet her. (incorrect)
It is the time I'll meet her. (correct)

#### The place where

This is the place where I dropped her. (incorrect) This is where I dropped her. (correct)

# **32.** Guide for Finding Writing Errors

While you are reading any sentence, you had better memorize the following basic hints to determine whether the sentence is correct or not.

## i. Subject- verb agreement (singular/ plural agreement)

- *I has* written three short stories. (x) *I have* written 3 letters. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

#### ii. Word form

I met a *beauty girl*. (x)
I met a *beautiful girl*. (√)
He is *gooder* than Ali. (x)
He is *better* than Ali. (√)

#### iii. Verb tense

- Yasar *is play* tennis now. (**x**) Yasar *is playing* tennis now. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

### iv. Add or omit a word/ article, etc.

- I want see you soon. (x) I want to see you soon. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

#### v. Word order

- I bought a *car black*. (**x**) I bought a *black car*. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

### vi. Incomplete sentence

- I went home. Because I felt tried. (x) I went home because I felt tired. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

# vii. Spelling

- The red car *stopped*. (**x**) The red car *stopped*. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

#### viii. Punctuation

- Who is that. (x) Who is that? ( $\sqrt{ }$ )

#### ix. Capitalization

she is going to japan. ( $\mathbf{x}$ ) She is going to Japan. ( $\sqrt{}$ )

### Exercise (70)

Find the errors and then correct them in the following sentences:

- 1. I have be living in London since 2001.
- 2. Don't repeat the song again.
- 3. He have been to Paris twice.
- 4. Ive three children.
- 5. I have two son.
- 6. Sami buyed this house 20 years ago.
- 7. John didn't attend the class. Because he was sick.
- 8. ali bought a good van.
- 9. What is your name.
- 10. An Earth rotates round the sun.
- 11. Didn't you saw that sign?
- 12. If I were a bird, I will fly to Canada.
- 13. I quit to smoke.
- 14. Suzan and Julia is coming to dinner

## Exercise (71)

Imagine you are an editor in Aljazeera international channel, you are asked to edit the following lines taken from an advertisement. There are six underlined mistakes; correct them.

- Stop **look** for a new computer.
- your best personal computer is now available.
- Our aim is to provide you with the **lateste** technology.

- Your computer was made in **england**.
- Now it **have** the best options.
- **Dont** think twice. You won't regret it.
- Do you still have any doubts.

### Exercise (72)

**Error analysis (A):** Every sentence of the following has one error out of the underlined words/ phrases/ clauses. Find the error and then correct it.

- 1. He <u>have been</u> to Paris <u>twice</u>.
- 2. I have study English linguistics for three years.
- 3. Sam <u>usually wake up</u> at six o'clock.
- 4. Ive three children.
- 5. I have two son.
- 6. I saw a beauty girl.
- 7. He is been three since 2007.
- 8. Sami <u>buyed</u> this house 20 <u>years</u> ago.
- 9. John didn't attend the class. Because he was sick.
- 10. ali bought a good van.
- 11. What is your name.
- 12. An Earth rotates round the sun.
- 13. Last night I saw a dog. A dog was chasing a cat.
- 14. You must to write your article.
- 15. I don't has any money.
- 16. Too much people use the <u>subway</u> to get <u>their</u> work in time.

# **Error analysis (B):** Find and correct the errors in the following sentences:

- 1. She don't have any money.
- 2. That is your pen, aren't they?
- 3. Everyone took the test, didn't he?
- 4. Ann doesn't drink coffee, does she.
- 5. I am supposed to leave now, aren't we?
- 6. Does your plane left at seven?

- 7. Didn't you saw that sign?
- 8. When did you do last night? I studied.
- 9. Why can answer the question? Ali
- 10. Why is she? At home.
- 11. How much is she? 12
- 12. Where book should I buy? This one.
- 13. I is a student.
- 14. George is carelessly.
- 15. Ali speaks English good.
- 16. She asked him an easily question.
- 17. That house looks perfectly.
- 18. Birds flies.
- 19. he has never met her.
- 20. It is rain now.
- 21. I have to study hard because of my course is difficult.

### 33. Problem Words

Some people fail to distinguish between some words due to their similarity in spelling or pronunciation. The following are some of these words with their meanings:

<b>Word</b>	Meaning in English
acetic	acid used in vinegar, sour
ascetic	self-denying
angel	heavenly being
angle	a figure formed by two lines
	meeting at a certain point
adverse	hostile, unfavorable
averse (to)	having dislike, unwilling
cite	quote as an example
site	location
sight	view, aiming device
costume	clothing
custom	a traditional practice of a
	particular group of people
descent	lineage, downward motion
decent	suitable
dessert	pudding, the final course of
	a meal
desert	abandon, dry place
later	a time in the future
latter	last of two things
	mentioned
loose	opposite of tight
lose	opposite of win, mislay
peace	opposite of war
piece	part of a whole
principal	main, director of a school
principle	fundamental rule
quiet	serene

quite completely

quit stop

their possessive adjective there opposite of here

they're contraction of 'they+are'

two number (2) too excessively, also

weather atmospheric conditions

whether if

whose relative pronoun

who's contraction of 'who+is/

who+has'

accept take the given except excluding advice (n) counseling advise (v) counsel

affect (v) to make a change effect (n) consequence

device plan
devise invent
elicit draw out
illicit unlawful
explicit direct, clear

implicit implied, unquestioning

formerly previously formally officially

immortal Incapable of dying

immoral bad persecute torture

prosecute to bring suit against precede to come before

proceed continue after interruption

beside next to

besides in addition to aside to one side

considerable rather large amount considerate polite, thoughtful

credible believable

creditable worthy of praise

hard difficult hardly barely

liquefy change to a liquid state liquidate eliminate, change to cash

amiable friendly, agreeable

(people/moods)

amicable characterized by goodwill

(relationships/documents)

biannual twice a year
biennial every two years
cannon a large gun
canon a ruling

censor to examine publications censure to blame, criticize severely

defective having a fault deficient having a lack discomfit to embarrass discomfort lack of comfort

exercise physical exertion, a piece of

school work

exorcise to rid of evil spirits extant still in existence extinct no longer in existence

fatal causing death

fateful important and decisive

hail frozen rain

hale healthy and strong
hyper- above (hypertension)
hypo- under (hypothermia)
illegible impossible to read
eligible qualified, suitable

literal word for word

literate able to read and write luxuriant profuse, growing thickly

and strongly

luxurious referring to luxury

momentary lasting for a very short time

momentous very important

moral concerning the principles of

right and wrong

morale state of confidence

noticeable obvious notable remarkable perpetrate to commit

perpetuate to cause to continue

personal of a person

personnel the people employed in a

work place

plain easy to see, frank, simple,

not beautiful

plane aeroplane pray to speak to god prey to hunt and kill

reign the time during which the

king reigns

rein one of the leather straps that

control a horse

stationary standing still stationery writing materials

wet to cover with moisture whet to sharpen, to stimulate

### More problem words for practice:

	b. seem (appear)
2.	On the, she is a kind person.  a. whole (entire) b. hole (gap)
3.	Ia lot better but I did it anyway.  a. knew (past of know)  b. new (fresh)
4.	Good traders buy low andhigh. <b>a. sell (trade)</b> b. cell (unit)
5.	Didn't Samiyou when you called him? <b>a. hear (perceive sound)</b> b. here (opposite of there)
5.	Do notin others' affairs. a. medal (award) b. meddle (interfere)
7.	Do you reallya new van? a. knead (message) b. need (require)
8.	During weekends I work as a tour  a. guide (lead) b. guyed
9.	I toldnot to call her but he would not listen  a. him  b. hymn (chant)

10.	My car broke down last night, so I called for atruck. a. toe (of the foot) b. tow (pull)
11.	Every time I sleep withhair I catch a cold. <b>a. wet (damp)</b> b. whet (sharpen)
12.	I want toyou for your achievements. a. complement (balance) b. compliment (praise)
13.	You are notto stay up later than 12 p.m. <b>a. allowed</b> (permitted)  b. aloud (audibly)
14.	My nephew has15 centimeters since last winter. a. groan (moan) b. grown (past participle of grow)
15.	Maryflowers to her father on Fathers' Day. a. scent (smell) b. sent (send)
16.	Are those cakesor artificial?  a. real (actual)  b. reel (roll)
17.	You need to read the text carefully to detect a hidden  a. clause (part) b. claws (claw)
18.	The rope you gave me was

	b. taut (tight)
19.	The animal has mud all over its a. pause (gap) b. paws (paw)
20.	Is it possible tominerals from Jordan valley? <b>a. leach (filter)</b> b. leech (tick; vampire)
21.	I served in abase for two years.  a. naval (marine) b. navel (part of the body)
22.	She traveled forwith a lot of money. <b>a. days (day)</b> b. daze (astonish)
23.	The manager is planning toout the project in three main stages. a. faze (put off) b. phase (stage)
24.	You mustin that wild horse. a. reign (time in power) b. rein (control)
25.	I've got a new rod and a. real (actual) b. reel (roll)
26.	Jolie served in the armoured

b. corps (unit)
<ul><li>27. The dessert was a sliced on a bar of chocolate.</li><li>a. pair (couple)</li><li>b. pare (peel)</li></ul>
<ul><li>28. We plannedvacation carefully</li><li>a. hour (60 minutes)</li><li>b. our (adjective pronoun)</li></ul>
<ul><li>29. Thewaited for ten hours.</li><li>a. patience (endurance)</li><li>b. patients (sick)</li></ul>
30. I learned towhen I was six.  a. sew (stitch) b. so (thus)
31. An egg has the white part and the a. yoke (repression) b. yolk (inner yellow part of an egg)
<ul><li>32. Many people believe that passengers should have the exa ready. a. fair (pale)</li><li>b. fare (charge)</li></ul>
33. Do youthe way to the British Council?  a. know b. no
34. A wedding party is a beautiful a. right (correct) b. rite (ritual)

35.	Do youthe money for dinner? a. halve (devide) b. have (possess)
36.	There is a worldwideon ivory trade. <b>a. ban</b> (forbid)  b. van (front)
37.	Ais the short way of referring to an animal doctor. a. bet (gamble) b. vet (animal doctor)
38.	The judge decided that Samir could be released on a 200 J.D
	a. bail (surety; payment) b. veil (covering)
39.	The ship had a leak, so we had to out the water.  a. bail (remove out)  b. veil (covering)
40.	This computer is the of my work! It keeps logging off. a. vain (ineffective) <b>b. bane</b> (nuisance)
41.	He likes tohis wife with gifts and flowers. <b>a. lavish (to make something bountiful)</b> b. ravish (of rape)
42.	The president wasfrom his country and forced to live in Spain. a. vanished (missing) b. banished (expel)

43	.Najeeb Mahfouz received theprize for literature. a. Novel (work of fiction)
	b. Nobel (name of an award)
44	.Sending printed-false information could result in a charge of
	a. rival (competitor) b. libel (defamation)
45	The winner has time toin his success party. a. rebel (revolt) b. revel (drink)
46	One symptom of measles is having a red  a. rash (reaction)  b. lash (tie)
47	.Cats are preferred as pets because they have a strong sense of  a. loyalty (faithfulness) b. royalty (monarchs)
48	The painfulin my neck was caused by hunching over the TV for long time. a. click (tick) b. crick (spasm)
sh	a. I think it's hard to concentrate while hearing the harp, loudof the typewriters.  a. clack (click) b. crack (break)

### Exercise (73)

Select the correct word in parentheses to complete the meaning of the sentence.

- 1. A beautiful (angel/ angle) visited me.
- 2. I have (your/ you're) notes in my notebook.
- 3. It is a (costume/ custom) in Jordan to eat lamb on wedding parties.
- 4. (Weather/ Whether) we run or walk depends on the roads conditions.
- 5. Although my brother doesn't like (dessert/desert), I prefer something sweet.
- 6. James and Fredrick teach kindergarten; the (latter/later) works in Nepal.
- 7. King Abdullah II is of the Hashemite (decent/descent).
- 8. You need to (site/sight/cite) your references when you write an essay.
- 9. My shirt came (lose/loose) and it needed to be tightened.
- 10. Asma had to (quit/quiet/quite) eating sweets to be healthier.
- 11. Your remarks greatly (effected/affected) Kaite.
- 12. After declaring bankruptcy, General Motors was forced to (liquefy/liquidate) its assets.

# Progress Tests

### **Test** (1)

Q1. Choose the best answer.				
1. Have you to Paris?				
a. be ever		c. were		
2. Dave has already	the meeting.			
a. inaugurated	b. inaugurate	c. inaugurating		
3. Niss my glasse	es.			
a. broken	b. broke	c. break		
4. Sali this portra	it by herself.			
a. do	b. did	c. done		
5. Ali enter this t	heatre. It's forbidden.			
a. mustn't	b. don't have	c. might		
6. I have a toothache. Y	ou see the dentist			
a. should	b. can	c. ought		
7. I'm not familiar	this teacher's way of te	esting.		
a. with	b. to	c. from		
8. I graduated Mu	'tah university.			
a. from	b. of	c. on		
9 my opinion, sh	e is ugly.			
a. In	b. At	c. On		
10. My father is named	his grandfather			
	b. after	c. about		
11. I was born To	okyo.			
a. in	b. on	c. at		
12. Miss Ruby always comes late. She's never time.				
a. on	b. at	c. by		
13. I came foot. I didn't catch the train.				
a. on	b. in	c. by		
14. I for you for 3	3 hours.			
a. have been	b. has being waited	c. wait		
waiting				
15. Seldom Dr. Khattab.				
a. have I met	b. I have met	c. met		

16. Killing animals is unlawful. You hunt dogs.					
a. mustn't	c. can't				
17. Could I have a	of Jam?				
a. Jar	c. loaf				
18. Can I have a	of tea?				
a. cup	b. bottle	c. dozen			
19. Can I have a					
a. bar	b. head	c. dozen			
20. When I came in, I sa	aw her football.				
a. play	b. playing	c. is playing			
21. He in 2001.	1 7 6	1 , 5			
a. died	b. has died	c. was dying			
22. I to leave nov	W.				
a. have	b. can	c. must			
23. None of my friends	a good friend.				
	b. is	c. am			
24. One of the students	in trouble.				
a. was	b. were	c. are			
25. The number of mal	es more than the f	emales.			
a. is	b. are	c. were			
	ends flying toni	ght.			
a. is	b. are	c. was			
27. I have pure	water, so I should buy so	ome more.			
	b. a little	c. few			
28. I got up 7: 3	30.				
a. in	b. on	c. at			
29. She looks than I do.					
a. happier	b. more happy	c. happyer			
30. Did you tennis yesterday?					
a. played	•	c. playing			
31 . I a dream.	- ·				
a. has	b. am	c. have			

- 32. If you take advantage of Rami's experience, you.....
- a. are going to succeed b. would succeed c. could have succeeded.

# Q2. Study the following pair of sentences and answer the questions below.

- a. I'm going to have the walls painted.
- b. I'm going to paint the walls.

Which sentence means that the speaker will not do the painting himself.

# Q3. Correct the underlined mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1. I'm <u>interesting</u> in Salim's idea.
- 2. How many <u>peoples</u> have you invited?
- 3. When I came back, everything <u>is</u> fine.

# Q4. The following is incomplete sentence. Beneath the sentence you will see three words or phrases. Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- During the early period of ocean navigation,.....any need for sophisticated instruments of techniques.
  - a. so that hardly
  - b. hardly was
  - c. there was hardly

### **Test (2)**

<b>Q1.</b>	Complete	the sentences	with	the	correct	form	of	verbs	in
brad	ckets.								

- 1. The teacher made the student.....the class. (leave)
- 2. Mr. Robert had his wife.....the food. (prepare)
- 3. My father had his house...... His elder son painted the house. (paint)
- 4. I made my students.....the classroom's windows. (wash)
- 5. George got some children.....his garage ( clean)
- 6. I ...... the car boot after I hit a truck. (damage)
- 7. It .....heavily in Mumbai in June and July. (rain)

# Q2. Give the correct 'ing' form/ gerund and the past form of the following words:

stop:	stopping	/ stopped.
open:	•••••	. /
control:		. /
try:		. /
lie:		. /

### Q3. Give the correct past form of the following words:

argue:	argued
destroy:	
prefer:	
study: .	
play:	

# Q4. Use either the present simple or the present progressive of the verbs in brackets to fill in the blanks.

- 1. Diana can't help you right now. She ...... (take) a shower.
- 2. Dove..... (wash) his hair every weekend.
- 3. The sun..... (rise) from the east.
- 4. Please be quiet. I ..... (try) to write a letter.

5. I'm glad that you (visit) Petra this month.	
6. She can't afford that car. It (cost) a lot of money.	
7. Right now I (check) the student's exercise books.	
8. That pen (not/ belong) to me.	
9. This evening Laura (help) Jim with his homework.	
10. I (not / love) Jerry. I really (hate) him.	
11. She (need) you to help her husband now.	
12.I (want) to check in right now or I'll miss t	he
flight.	
Q5. Choose the correct word in brackets.	
1. The boy (raised/ rose) his hands.	
2. Water (boils/ boiles) at 100 degrees.	
3. Brown (set/ sat) in a chair because he was	
exhausted.	
4. I (set/ sat) you pen over there an hour ago.	
5. Johnson (laid/ lay) on his bed.	
6. If I were you, I would (lie/ lay ) down and	
sleep.	
7. Yesterday I (sleeped/ slept) at 10. p.m.	
8. I usually (deal/ deals) with honest people.	
9. The plane (flew/ flied) a few hours ago.	
10. The police (catched/ caught) the thief last	
week.	
Q6. Select the appropriate preposition to complete t	he
sentences.	
1. Are you interested teaching English?	
a. to b. in c. of	
2. Can you visit me noon time?	
a. at b. in c. on	
3. Would you mind calling me 7 o'clock?	
a. at b. on c. in	
4. Iran was war with Iraq for 10 years.	
a. in b. at c. on	

5. He learnt French ...... 5 weeks. b. at c. on 6. It is usually hot ..... summer. b. at a. in c. on 7. He was walking ..... the snow. a. in b. at c. on 8. She hasn't seen me ...... last year. a. for b. since c. at 9. She stayed at home ...... 7 o'clock to 10 o'clock. a. from b. on c. about

### Q7: Using the dictionary entry below, choose the correct form to fill in the blanks.

Magic (n): mysterious charm
Magical (adj): charming
Magician (n): a person skilled in magic

- 1. The tricks of the..... astonished the viewers.
- 2. I'm touched by the ..... of Shakespeare's novels.

### **Q8**: Rewrite the following sentences avoiding the errors where necessary.

- 1. dr ali is the english teacher at amman private university.
- 2. A: Are you a teacher?
  - B: no. I'm not
- the womens' mosque is to your left. **3.**
- 4. Are you happy to join the team.
- 5. Because I'm optimistic I won the championship.
- I bought Tims car. **6.**

	7.	I bough	it a pen a boo	ok and a table	<b>).</b>	
Q9.	1. s was/ 2. Y	shining/ T ' sun You/ last r	he/ yesterday	// eans/ wearing	<b>make sentences</b> .	
_		_	•	_	nent, decide whe	ther
the se	ntenc	es are co	rrect or inco	orrect?		
	1.	People fr	om the south	of Cork is s	o friendly. ( )	
	2.	You and	I am suppose	ed to live tog	ether in Geneva. (	)
<b>Q11.</b>	Cho	ose the co	orrect prepo	sition.		
	1.				Street, doesn't he	?
		a. in			c. on	·
	2.			o leave Albai	nia10 minu	tes.
		a. in			c. at	
	3.	Angela		nady	ou unless you	
interru	ipt he	r.	_	-	·	
	•		b. on		c. at	
O12.	The	following	is incomple	ete sentence.	Beneath the	
senter	ice yo	ou will se	e three word		s. Choose the one	

- Simple photographic lenses cannot.....sharp, undistorted images over a wide field.

a. to formb. are formed

c. formd. forming

verbs in brackets.

### **Test (3)**

Q1. Use the past simple or the past progressive to correct the

2. While I ..... (drive) down King's Street, a red car ......

1. I..... (have) an accident last week.

	(hit)mine.
3.	Three years ago, the Sudanese government (decide) to build ten dams. At that time, many farmers in the country
	side (starve) because of the drought.
4.	I (fall) down as I (run)in the corridor
	barefoot.
5.	What (wear/ Asmahan) at last night's party?
	ill in the gaps with the correct form of verbs by using the
	imple or the present perfect.
	Suha (not / attend ) any meetings since January.
	Bill(go) to Spain last night.
	Hejust (return) from Honolulu.
4.	In her whole lifetime, Helena (never/ see) snow.
5.	Up to now, William (finish) four exams.
6.	I (have) this car for ten years.
7.	Inever (win) a lottery.
8.	How long you (stay) in Grand Tulip Hotel?
9.	Sam (feed) his dog before he came in? Yes, he did.
10.	The weather (be) nice lately.
11.	I (release) three thieves so far this week.
<b>^2</b> II	go the most menter to a most simulation southerness (1.2)
	se the past perfect or past simple for sentences (1-3).
	Bush (make) an apple pie after we got home.
	My little son (fall) asleep before we got home.
3.	He (become) a businessman after he (become) a T.V reporter.

### Q4. Find and correct the errors in the following sentences.

- 1. I visit my son in law three times when I was in Paris.
- 2. She is living at 37 Pennsylvanian Avenue since last June.
- 3. Amman have changed its name four times.
- 4. While I am writing my poem last night, Ali knocked the door.

### Q5. Use (in, on, or at) to supply an appropriate preposition for each of the following sentences.

- 1. I'll meet Sam .....the evening.
- 2. Sue always stays home .....night.
- 3. I'll call you.....10:30.
- 4. I was born.....August 6<sup>th</sup>, 1980.
- 5. .... the moment I'm reading a short story.
- 6. I don't like to go swimming.....the winter.

### Q6. Use (a, b, or c) to fill in the gaps with the appropriate answer.

- 1. Neither Sami ...... Ahmad attended the class. b. but also a. nor c. never 2. ..... Ahmad or the teacher is at risk. c. Although a. Either b. Not only 3. Not only did she drop the basket ..... lost her keys. b. neither a. but also c. but 4. Layth works as a physician ..... funds many poor people. a. but b. and c. when 5. He is rich ..... he has no car. b. if a. but c. because 6. Both Sami and Rashid ...... broke. b. are c. was 7. Neither Ali nor his friends ....... here.
- - a. is b. are c. be
- 8. ..... she is sick, she works hard.
- c. Because of a. Although b. Unless

	he was a hea	
a. since	b. despite	c. but
10 the cold	b. despite I weather, he is sitting or	ıtside.
	b. Although	
Q7. Write the following	ng sentences in reporte	d speech.
	relatives are coming to	
*	think Jerash is the m Ahmad	ost beautiful city in
(that)3. Josef says, 'My	parents have moved their	r house.
Q8. Select the best	answer.	
1. A: I am sick.		
B: You see the	doctor	
a. can't	b. must	c. don't have to
2. Sámi at 7:00 ev	very morning.	
a. wake up	b. wakes up	c. woke up
	kly in this street. It is no	
a. It is too narrow	b. it is narrow too	c. too it is narrow
4. There are peop	le outside.	
a. too many		c. too far
5. He ate the bisc	uits. The box is empty.	
a. all	b. some	c. any
6. It is peaceful there.		·
a. any		c. all
7. Do you want v		
a. some		c. a few
8. I live in the co	•	
a. used to		c. am

IRIS					
9. Do you know how po	eople live in city?				
a. a	b. the	c. x			
10 people in Sw	ritzerland can speak Fren	nch, but not			
many.	•				
a. some	b. many	c. all			
11. Mr. Hayek, is	s a teacher at my school,	is leaving soon.			
	b. which	c. where			
12. Thank you for taking	ng me to the exhibition, .	I enjoyed a			
lot.	,	<i>3 3</i>			
a. who	b. which	c. when			
13. Fredrick wishes he	younger so he co	ould play basketball.			
	b. had been	c. is			
14. Could I have a	of ice cream?				
a. jar	b. container	c. scoop			
Q9. The following is incomplete sentence. Beneath the sentence you will see three words or phrases. Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. of tissues is known as histology.  a. Studying scientific b. The scientific study c. To study scientifically  Q10. The following sentence has four underlined words or phrases. Identify the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct.  - Of the much factors that contributed to the growth of  a b c  international tourism in 1990s, one of the most important was  d  the advent of Internet in 1990.					

### **Test (4)**

# Q1. Find and correct the errors in the form of modals or the verbs they precede in the following sentences:

- 1. Rose can to play well.
- 2. Rose wills play well.
- 3. Rose should had played better.
- 4. Can Rose to behave well?
- 5. Do you can run faster than Jim?
- 6. They don't can go to Amman by bus.
- 7. I must going now.
- 8. I don't have depart now.
- 9. I have to playing basketball.
- 10. You ought study tonight.
- 11. The driver shoulds slow down.
- 12. You had better got a visa.
- 13. I was able reach the mountain top.

# Q2. Change the following sentences from active into passive: 1. Sam opens the rad window every other marring:

1. Sam opens the red window every other morning.
by Sam .
2. Sam is painting the brown barrels.
The brown barrels
3. The policemen have smashed the gate.
The gateby the policemen.
4. The taxi driver shook the red wine bottle.
The red wine bottle
5. Lee was washing the cars.
by Lee.
6. Tom and Jeff had served the old women.
by Tom and Jeff.
7. Jeffery will set up a new plan.
by Jeffery.
8. The government is going to establish a new hospital.

IRIS				
•••••			by the gove	ernment
Q3. R		he following sen	ntences so that tl	ney give the same
1.	_	lish company ma	ade 20,000 pairs o	f trousers last
2.	My fath	ner built our hou	se in 1990.	
3.	•	-	te my rug tomorro	
4.		dropped a large v		
		•	son how to behave	
	_	the following se	entences using eitl	her a gerund or
	initive.	1 11 1: /.	1 1 .1	
		ded looking / to		
	-	enjoy playing / to		
	_	_	listening to you.	
		-	t Jordan next week	<b>(.</b>
		alking/ to take a		
			uild a new house.	1
/.	Do you	mind closing/ to	close the door? Th	iank you.
05.0	h o o a o 4 h			
_		e correct answe chemist.	Γ•	
a. a		b. the	c. an	d. x
		USA		u. A
a. a		b. the	c. an	d. x
			south of J	
a. t		b. a	c. an	d. x
		- hotel seems na		<del></del>
		b. Those		d. that is

5are	Alison's pam	iphlets.					
a. This	b. That	c. These	d. which				
6. The underlined letter in the word <i>looks</i> is pronounced:							
a./s/	b. /z/	c./ez/	d. /iz/				
7. The under	lined letter in	the word 'cite' is pron	ounced:				
a. /s/	b. /k/	c./ng/	d. /si/				
8. The under	rlined letter in	the word 'helpe $\underline{d}$ ' is p	pronounced:				
a. /t/	b. /d/	c./ed/	d. /id/				
	_	e underlined modals	/ phrases in the				
following senten							
		vid comes tonight.					
	J	b. Must	c. Will				
	uld call her h						
	ght to		c. Could				
	t this luggage						
	n able to		c. Had better				
		lling you after midnig					
a. Ab	ility	b. Request	c. Obligation				
<b>7 3</b> 7	4 11	• 1.					
	_ `	our car right now.	D 1111				
a. nec	essity	b. Strong obligation	c. Prohibition				
O7 Correct the	ada i b	a al-ata ta 64 th a aa-	uiu a af aa ah				
_	words in Dr	ackets to fit the mear	ning of each				
sentence.	about my En	alich homowark when	tho				
•	about my Eng	glish homework when	uie				
phone(ring).	n the town I	used to spand my free	time with				
2. When I in the town, I used to spend my free time with							
my friends.(live) 3. What you usually when you get home from							
school? (do)							
4. A: What your father usually (do)							
B: He a newspaper reporter. ( be )							
	5. Sue used to when she was a child. (smoke)						
6. She her tea yet. (not drink)							
o. one ner wa yet. (not urink)							

7. Fatima Justher lunch. (eat)
8 you ever to London?( be)
9. I my ankle once, in a basketball match.(sprain)
10. A tourist stopped to ask me for directions. He (lose) his
map.
11. I had already cooked the dinner by the time my mother
(come) home.
Q8. In the following questions each sentence has four
underlined words or phrases. Identify the one word or
phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be
correct.
1. Mohammad <u>studied</u> many <u>different</u> cultures, and he
a b
was one of the first anthropologists to photograph him
c d
subjects.
2. A food <u>additive</u> is <u>any chemical</u> that food manufactures
a b
intentional add to their products.

### **Test (5)**

Q1. The under	rlined le	etters in the following	ng words are
pronounced:			
1. l <u>i</u> ft 2. <u>c</u> old	a. /I/	b. /e/	
2. <u>c</u> old	a. /g/	b. /k/	
3. <b>g</b> ood	a. /g/	b. /k/	
Q2. Select the	correct	answer.	
1. There are two	o	in our town.	
a. travel ag	ents	b. travels agent	c. travels agents
2. I have five			
a. sister- in	- laws	b. sisters- in- law	c. sisters- in- laws
3. I have ten			
a. childs		b. childrens	c. children
4. I met seven.		••	
a. police m	ans	b. polices man	c. policemen
5. I divided the	class int	0	_
a. haves		b. halves	c. halfes
6. We had few.		. we need to square t	them away.
a. crisises		b. crises	c. crisis
7. I have 300			
a. aircrafts		b. aircraftes	c. airscraft
8. The committe	ee	changing their	olans.
		b. was	c. are
9. Physics	the	most interesting sub	ject.
a. is			c. be
		passed the test.	
		b. Little	c. Too much
		ee is not enough for	
There is		_	
a. little		b. a little	c. few
Q3. Select the	appropr	riate answer.	
1. The food si	mells		

	b. delicious	c. deliciousness				
2. Ann is than Sal.						
<ul><li>a. taller</li><li>3. This exam is the</li></ul>	b. tallest	c. more tall				
3. This exam is the	ever.					
a. bad	b. worse	c. worst				
4. She is the						
a. pretty	b. prettyest	c. prettiest				
5. This house has	tables than ours.					
a. less	b. least	c. the least				
6. The movie was	I almost slept.					
a. bored	b. boring	c. boringly				
7. Luna is as a	ıs Sylvia.					
a. pretty	b. prettier	c. more pretty				
8. Ma'an is tha	an Amman.					
a. far	b. further	c. furthest				
9. Ali walks						
a. slow	b. slowly	c. slower				
10. He drive						
a. fast		c. fastly				
11. He drives						
a. careful	•	c. carfulness				
12 did you wa						
a. Where	b. When	c. Which				
13 did you med	et him? In Asab.					
a. Where	b. When	c. Who				
14 car do you j	prefer? The Mercedes .					
a. Whom	b. Why	c. Which				
15 didn't you a		sick.				
a. Why	b. Who	c. Where				
16 is it to Amr	nan ? 80 km .					
a. How much	b. How far	c. How many				
Q4. Select the best preposition.						
1. I am fond	adventure films.					
a. of	b. in	c. on				

2. My students are	accustomed .		my way	of tackling
issues.				
a. to	b. in		c. about	
3. David is good	physics	S.		
a. to	b. from		c. at	
4. You are my best fi	riend. I can real	ly rely	yo	u.
a. on	b. of		c. from	
5. He went	Washington	by train.		
a. to	b. in		c. by	
6. I live 1	0 Jones Street.		-	
a. in	b. at		c. on	
7. I will wait you	the sec	cond circle.		
a. at	b. in		c. on	

### **Test** ( **6**)

Q1. Adding 'ed' or 'ing' to the wadjectives so that they fit the meaning of		
1. Last night I had a very (ex		
still a little bit (please).	, ang,	
2. You made fun of Conrad. He is rea	ally (embarrass).	
3. The test was (disappoint).	· · ·	
4. You look (tire). Was your	-	
5. Can you turn the T.V down? It is		
Q2. Correct the verbs in brackets. Use	present simple, present	
progressive, past simple or past progre		
2. Farah never as sad as toda		
3. Dan his grandfather regul		
4. Rick to London, this winter, to meet wife. (fly)		
5. Look, Sal to solve the problem (try)		
6. My roommate me every day. ( wake up)		
7. It last night when the power went off. (snow)		
8. Al TV as his mother was cooking. (watch)		
9. Ricky his radio set this time yesterday. (fix)		
10. Jessie to the school after she had breakfast. (go)		
11. I my wallet while I was lo		
Q3. Use the present perfect or the past	perfect of the verbs in	
brackets:		
1. Kirby his calculator. He is (lose)	s looking for it right now.	
2. Jones was sad. He the test (	fail).	
Q4. Circle the correct answer:		
1. The rate of crime in the USA	this year.	
a. decrease b. is decreasing	c. decreased	
2. Lucy often letters to her ex-hu	ısband.	
a. was sending b. sends	c. is sending	

3. Suzy and I w	hen my father came ir	1.		
a. was fighting	b. were fighting	c. fight		
4. The food we ate yesterdaywell.				
a. tastes	b. tasted	c. was tasting		
a. tastes 5. What a good day! The	sun and the	sea is calm.		
	b. is shining			
6. Rula is a good teacher. She for 5 years				
a. teaches	b. has been teaching	c. is teaching		
7. My neighbor	in Washington fo	or 10 years. Then he		
moved to New York.	C	•		
a. lives	b. is living	c. lived		
a. lives 8. The sun in th	e west.			
a. set	b. sets	c. is setting		
9. The driver was talking on phone while he				
a. was driving	b. drove	c. is driving		
10. Sumaya quit dancing two years ago. Shefor 10 years.				
a.had been dancing	b. has danced	c. will dance		
11. I cashed my cheque. I my sister tonight.				
a. will visit	b. am going to visit	c. had visited		
12. My family	Tokyo before the volca	ano erupted.		
a. have left	b. has left	c. had left		
13. If you want to meet		ning, she you		
at Guildford pub main gate.				
a. will be waiting	b. will have waited	c. was waiting		
Q5. Select the correct a	nswer.			
1. He said he a	good villa.			
a. had	b. has	c. is having		
2. He asked				
a. where did she go	b. where she went	c. where is gone		
3. The waitress		Bartlett.		
a. who	b. whom	c. which		
4. The coach I cheated was clumsy.				
a. whom	b. which	c. where		

5. The apartment	. I live is attractive.		
a. when	b. where	c. whom	
6. January month is	I met Mrs. Tyre.		
a. where	b. which	c. when	
7. The cat fur is	disgusting is his.		
a. whose	b. which	c. who	
8 having the authority, he can fire you.			
a. because of	b. so	c. despite	
9. Seldomsuch a	dre.g.		
a. I have talked to	b. have I talked to		
10. Look how slippery th	e road is! Itla	st night.	
a must have rained	b. could have raine	ed	

### **Test (7)**

# Q1: Choose the appropriate answer for the following situations: Situation (1): Hemingway is a good person, but he didn't call for help because he didn't see the accident.

- ❖ If Hemingway .....the accident, he would have phoned for help.
- a. saw
- b. had seen
- c. sees

<u>Situation (2):</u> Alma has good computer skills, so that she can do her searches.

- ❖ It .....possible for Alma to do her searches if she didn't have good computer skills.
- a. wouldn't be
- b. hadn't been
- c. won't be

# Q2: Read the following pairs of sentences and answer the questions.

### Pair (1):

- a. John has been reading a book about the history of English language
- b. John has read a book a bout the history of English language.
- Which sentence indicates that *reading is in progress*?

### **Pair (2):**

- a. Who's that man? He must be my boss.
- b. I must go now.
- In which sentence does 'must' express necessity?

### **Pair (3):**

- a. I have been studying English literature since 1999.
- b. I am interested in this article since I like literature.
- In which sentence can 'since' be replaced by 'because'?

### **Pair (4):**

- a. My lady had already eaten the meal before I got the house
- b. My lady was eating when I got the house.

• Write the sentence which expresses that the eating was completed when I arrived.

### **Pair (5):**

- a. I will be writing a letter at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- b. I will have written a letter by 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- Which sentence means that writing a letter will be finished at 7:30?

# Q3 : Select the correct answer.

Q3. Select the correct a	IIISWEI.			
1. This is a Chr	ristmas holiday plan.			
<ol> <li>a. complete</li> </ol>	b. completely	c. completion		
2. Mr. Brown is	. That is why he can'	t go to school.		
a. sick	b. sickness	c. sickly		
3. Your skin feels	• • • • •			
a. hot	b. hotly	c. hotness		
4. Don't press the	'ok' button before	rethe possible		
consequences.				
a. know	b. knowledge	c. knowing		
5. You can leave if you.	finished the	writing section of the		
test.				
<ol> <li>a. complete</li> </ol>	b. completely	c. completion		
6. Have youyo				
a. final		c. finally		
7. Mr. Dove didn't talk to	in his grow	up. I think he is upset.		
a. anybody	b. nobody	c. somebody		
8. Give meopp	oortunity, please.			
a. another	b. the other	c. any body		
9. Can you turn the light of	off? It isIt	hurts my eyes.		
a. too bright	b. bright enough	c. very bright		
10. She decided to buy	apartment.			
a. a five-room	b. five- a room	c. a five rooms		
11. She gave me a				
a. well planed	b. well- planned	c. planned well		
12. Qatar is a country.				
a. gas- producing	b. gas- produced	c. producing gas		

14them	b. neither	lot of time	c. too	·	
15. No news		8			
a. is	b. are		c. were	e	
Q4: Circle the app	ropriate answer				
1. I used to	-		rs old.		
a. smoke	b. smokin	g	c. smo	ked	
2. He told her	him again.				
	b. to not v			visit	
3. I can't tell					
	b. whethe	r	c. we t	here	
4going					
a. Whose					
5. Reading Shakes					liff.
a. effect			c. afte	cts	
6. It is not easy to					
_	b. except		c. exco	cept	
7. My elephant is e	b. its		. :4		
a. it's			c. it wa		harva ta
8. You have to supervise	control your	employee	s and	1 1	nave to
a. my	b. mine		c. mee	n	
9. They may find a					ollege in
Bella.	C				C
a. site	b. sight		c. cite	e	
10. The lake seems					
a. quite	b. quiet		c. quie	tly	
11. Jim received his	letter and Rania	gotle	tter too	).	
a. hers	b. her		c. min	e	
12rooms a. How many	s are in the Sultar b. How m				

13. Sali doesn't have	about opium.	
a. much knowledge	_	c. a few knowledge
14are too many	· ·	
•	b. There	c. Their
Q5. Select the appropria	ite answer.	
1. Have you Faird	ouz's new CD?.	
a. bought	b. buying	c. buy
2. The word for someon		-
a		
a. producer	b. producer	<ul><li>c. product</li></ul>
3. He has been a teache	er 2002.	
a. for	b. since	c. ago
4. My brother has a shirt	rt with long sleeves.	He's got a
a.long-sleeved shirt	b. longed- sleeve sh	irt
5. I am of spiders	S.	
a. terrified	b. terrifying	c. terrify
6. Fairouz is a per	rson.	
a. popular	b. popularity	<ul><li>c. popularize</li></ul>
7 players are the	re in a football team?	?
Eleven.		
a. How many	b. When	c. Who
8 did the Derby ra	ace start? In 1989	
a. Where		c. How

# **Test (8)**

Choose the correct answer a, b, c	e, or d.	
1. They have lived in Dubai	six years.	
a. since b. between	c. for	d. among
2. Hosam would have called the	ne security if he	the
accident.		
a. sees b. had seen	c. saw	d. have seen
3. Did Mr. Mobaidina	lot of homework	yesterday.
a. has b. have	c. had	d. having
4. Mustafawhen I called	her.	
a. is eating b. has eaten	c. was eating	d. ate
5. Bill and Johnsince 7 d	o'clock.	
a. are waiting here b. wait	here	
c. had waited here d. have	waited here	
6. The cabinet is straight ahead	d. It is	
a. close to you b. in ba	ck of you	
c. opposite to you d. in fro	ont of you	
7. Al-Khattab enjoyedn		
a. to read b. read	c. be read	d. reading
8. I'm interestedmeeting	ng your sister.	
a. for b. in	c. to	d. with
9. Please,all the gates.		
<ul><li>a. open</li><li>b. opens</li><li>10. The rain prevented us from</li></ul>	c. opened	d. opening
10. The rain prevented us from	for the port	•
a. leave b. to leave	C	d. left
11. Why don't you wait until Sa		
a. come b. comes		d. had come
12is a very important s	skill.	
a. Speak b. To speak	c. Spoke	d. Speaking
13. I would help you with your		
a. has b. had	c. have had	d. having
14. The professor said, "can yo		
a. where he is from b. where		
c. if he is from d. whether	er is he from	

15. Is the preparatory testby the P.T. Instructor?			
a. given			
16. You can't run			
a. can you	b. could you	c. can't you	d. do you
17. Heat can be	through ire	on.	•
a. transmitted			d. transmitting
	transmitted		
18. That is the tra	into Sha	arm Al-Sheikh.	
a. which goes	b. that go	c. go	d. has gone
19. Fred's park is not	as attractive as.	Jane's. Jane's ga	rden isthan
Fred's.		_	
a. much attractive	b. more attract	ive	
c. the most attractive	d. less attractiv	ve	
20. She had come acr	oss a woman	name was so	strange.
a. whose	b. who	c. whom	d. where
21. Mathin all .	Jordanian schoo	ls.	
a. is taught	_	-	d. were taught
22. There are many v			
	b. for		
23. Rasmi weighs 20			
a. Rasmi is light	ter than his b.	Rasmi's son is	heavier than his
son	da	d	
c. They are alike			same
24. They aren't going			
a. are they	•	c. They aren't	d. they are
25. Choose the correct			
a.Her necklace is			
b. Her necklace	•		
c. Her necklace i		· ·	
d. Her necklace i	•		
26. I haven't got used		ount of dessert.	
a. eat	b. eating	c. eaten	d. ate
27. A few men came			
a. Not many	b. Not much	c. None	d. plenty

28. All philosophe	ers must befor	e his majesty the	e king arrives.
a. sign in	b. signed in	c. signing	d. signature
29. Banks don't we	orkChristmas		
a. in	b. on	c. at	d. in front of
30. Before he beca	ame broke, he	buy anything.	
a. has to	b. could	c. should	d. ought to
31. We replaced th	netables.		
a. break	b. breaking	c. broke	d. broken
32. The headmaste	er didn't meet me, a	andI.	
a. didn't too	b. either did	c. neither did	d. so did I
33. Do you know l	how much	?	
a. a car costs	b. costing a car	c. a car does c	cost d. is a car costing



# Appendix (1) Irregular verbs

<b>Infinitive</b>	<u>Past</u>	Past participle
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
be	was; were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
befall	befell	befallen
behold	beheld	beheld
bend	bent	bent
bereave	bereft	bereft
beseech	besought	besought
beset	beset	beset
bet	bet	bet
bid	bid	bid; bidden
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bit; bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept

cut cut cut deal dealt dealt dig dug dug did do done draw drew drawn dream dreamt dreamt drunk drink drank drive drove driven eat ate eaten fall fell fallen feed fed fed fight fought fought find found found flee fled fled fling flung flung fly flew flown forbid forbade forbidden forecast forecast **forecast** forgotten forget forgot forgiven forgive forgave freeze froze frozen get got got; gotten went gone go grind ground ground grow grew grown have had had heard heard hear hide hid hidden; hid hit hit hit hold held held hurt hurt hurt keep kept kept knelt kneel knelt know known knew laid laid lay

sell

send

shake

shed

set

lead led led lean leant leant leap leapt leapt learn learnt learnt leave left left lent lend lent let let let lay lie lain lit light lit lose lost lost made made make meant mean meant met meet met mistake mistook mistaken misunderstood misunderstand misunderstood mow mowed mown overcast overcast overcast paid paid pay put put put read read read rend rent rent rid rid rid ridden ride rode ring rung rang rise rose risen run ran run sawed saw sawn said said say see saw seen seek sought sought

sold

sent

shaken

shed

set

sold

sent

set

shook

shed

shine shone shone shoot shot shot showed show shown shrink shrank shrunk shut shut shut sing sang sung sink sank sunk sit sat sat sleep slept slept slide slid slid slung sling slung smell smelt **smelt** speak spoke spoken spent spent spent spin span spun split split split spread spread spread spring sprang sprung stand stood stood steal stole stolen stick stuck stuck sting stung stung stink stank stunk stride strode stridden strike struck struck string strung strung swear swore sworn sweep swept swept swim swam swum **swing** swung swung take took taken teach taught taught tear tore torn tell told told think thought thought

write

throw threw thrust thrust understand understood upset upset wake woke wear wore weave wove weep wept win won withdraw withdrew

wrote

thrown
thrust
understood
upset
waken
worn
woven
wept
won
withdrawn
written

## Appendix (2) Regular & Irregular verbs

The past form of a verb could have either regular or irregular form.

 $\Rightarrow$  The regular form ends in 'd'/ 'ed' in past and past participle form, as in:

<b>Infinitive</b>	Past	Past participle
act	acted	acted
walk	walked	walked
hope	hoped	hoped

⇒ Whereas the irregular verbs are written differently, as in:

Infinitive	Past	Past participle
arise	arose	arisen
cut	cut	cut
catch	caught	caught

- Some irregular verbs have two past tenses and two past participles which are the same (one ends in (e)d whereas the other does not), as in:

Infinitive	Past	Past participle
burn	burned/ burnt	burned/ burnt
hang	hanged/ hung	hanged/ hung
kneel	kneeled/knelt	kneeled/ knelt
leap	leaped/ leapt	leaped/ leapt
learn	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt

- Some irregular verbs have past tenses that don't end in (e)d and have the same form of the past participles, as in:

Infinitive	Past	Past participle
bend	bent	bent
sit	sat	sat
stick	stuck	stuck
flee	fled	fled
lose	lost	lost

- Some irregular verbs have regular past tense forms but two possible past participles, one of which is regular, as in:

Infinitive	Past	Past participle
mow	mowed	mowed/ mown
prove	proved	proved/ proven
sew	sewed	sewed/ sewn
show	showed	show/ showed
swell	swelled	swelled/ swollen

- Some irregular verbs have past tense and past participle that are different from each other, as in:

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past</b>	Past participle
arise	arose	arisen
begin	began	begun
freeze	froze	frozen
go	went	gone
give	gave	given

# Appendix (3) British English and American English equivalent

<b>British English</b>	<b>American English</b>
mobile phone	cell phone
biscuit	cookie
chemist's/ chemistry	drugstore
pavement	sidewalk
autumn	fall
cupboard	closet
lorry	truck
holiday	vacation
underground	subway
lift	elevator
windscreen	windshield
trousers	pants
cooker	stove
aborigine	eggplant
sweets	candy
bonnet (on car)	hood
boot (on car)	trunk
rubbish	garbage
dressing gown	bathrobe
cinema	movie theatre
angry	mean (of mood)
mean	cheap
clever/ intelligent	smart
smart	well dressed

# **Appendix (4): Numbers**

# **Cardinals**

1 one	2 two	3 three	4 four
5 five	6 six	7 seven	8 eight
9 nine	10 ten	11 eleven	12 twelve
13 thirteen	14 fourteen	15 fifteen	16 sixteen
17 seventeen	18 eighteen	19 nineteen	20 twenty
21 twenty one	30 thirty	31 thirty one	40 forty
50 fifty	60 sixty	70 seventy	80 eighty
90 ninety	100 one hundred	101 one hundred	1000
-		_	-

and one ..... one thousand

1000000 million 100000000 billion

## **Ordinals**

1 <sup>st</sup> first	2 <sup>nd</sup> second	3 <sup>rd</sup> third	4 <sup>th</sup> fourth
5 <sup>th</sup> fifth	6 <sup>th</sup> sixth	7 <sup>th</sup> seventh	8 <sup>th</sup> eighth
9 <sup>th</sup> ninth	10 <sup>th</sup> tenth	11 <sup>th</sup> eleventh	12 <sup>th</sup> twelfth
13 <sup>th</sup> thirteenth	14 <sup>th</sup> fourteenth	15 <sup>th</sup> fifteenth	16 <sup>th</sup> sixteenth
17 <sup>th</sup> seventeenth	18 <sup>th</sup> eighteenth	19 <sup>th</sup> nineteenth	20 <sup>th</sup> twentieth
21 <sup>st</sup> twenty first	30 <sup>th</sup> thirtieth	40 <sup>th</sup> fortieth	50 <sup>th</sup> fiftieth
60 <sup>th</sup> sixtieth	70 <sup>th</sup> seventieth	80 <sup>th</sup> eightieth	90 <sup>th</sup> ninetieth
	100th 1	1 1/1	

100<sup>th</sup> hundredth

## **Dates**

<b>Examples (written)</b>	Read	
3/4/1989 (or) 3 April 1989	The third of April, nineteen eighty-nine	
	(or)	
	April the third, nineteen eighty-nine	
2000	Two thousand	
2009	Two thousand and nine	
1500	Fifteen hundred	
1510	Fifteen hundred and ten	

## **Fractions**

Examples (written)	Read	Examples (written)	Read
1/4	A quarter (or) fourth	4/10	Four tenths
1/2	A half	2/3	Two thirds
3/4	Three quarters	2 .2/3	Two and two thirds
3/6	Three sixths	2/5	Two fifths

**Decimals and Percentages** 

Decimals		P	Percentage
Examples (written)	Read	Examples (written)	Read
0.2	Point two	30%	Thirty percent
2.4	Two point four	30.5%	Thirty point five percent
3.5	Three point five	26%	Twenty six percent

**Timing** 

Examples (written)	Read	Examples (written)	Read
10:00	Ten o'clock	10:10	Ten past ten
10:15	Quarter past ten (or) ten, fifteen	10:35	Thirty five past ten (or)Ten, thirty five
10:30	Half past ten (or) ten, thirty	10:25	Twenty five past ten (or) Ten, twenty five
10:45	Quarter to eleven	10:55	Five to eleven

# **Appendix (5):** Nationalities

Country	Nationality
Egypt	Egyptian
Portugal	Portuguese
Iran	Iranian
Poland	Polish
Germany	German
Greece	Greek
Holland	Dutch
Japan	Japanese
Switzerland	Swiss
China	Chinese
France	French
Spain	Spanish
Syria	Syrian
Lebanon	Lebanese
Jordan	Jordanian
America	American
England	English
Turkey	Turkish
Iraq	Iraqi
Palestine	Palestinian
Russia	Russian
Canada	Canadian
Italy	Italian
Sweden	Swedish
Denmark	Danish
Pakistan	Pakistani
Thailand	Thai
Scotland	Scottish
Djibouti	Djiboutian
Timor	Timorese
Europe	European

Korea Korean
Kuwaiti Kuwaiti
Morocco Moroccan
Yemen Yemeni
Zimbabwe Zimbabwean

## Exercises (1-73) Answer Keys

## Exercise (1)

# Select the appropriate answer:

- 1. a./s/
- 2. b. /z/
- 3. a. /n /
- 4. a. /s/
- 5. b. /k/
- 6. b./g/
- 7. c./et/

# Exercise (2)

/t/	/d/	/ð/	/i/	/\Lambda/	/v/	/0/	/]/	/ed/
sacke <u>d</u> laughe <u>d</u>	playe <u>d</u> entangle <u>d</u>	<u>th</u> ese	ch <u>ea</u> p rep <u>ea</u> t rec <u>ei</u> ve	cons <u>u</u> mption ded <u>u</u> ction	<u>v</u> an	<u>th</u> in	<u>sh</u> arp	paint <u>ed</u> affect <u>ed</u>

# Exercise (3)

A:

noun	Robert
verb	helped
adjective	rich
adverb	very
preposition	<u>at</u>

determiner	<u>a few</u>
pronoun	She
conjunction	If

**B**:

- 1. <u>Fadi</u> is buying a new house in Amman. subject verb complement modifier
- 2. <u>Eddi has been shopping downtown</u>. subject verb modifier

#### Exercise (4)

- 1. <u>was playing</u> (verb phrase)
- 2. <u>Macbeth</u> (noun phrase)
- 3. <u>absolutely idle</u> (adjective phrase)
- 4. <u>in the pool</u> (prepositional phrase)
- 5. <u>before you arrive</u>. (adverbial phrase)

#### Exercise (5)

- 1. (simple)
- 2. (complex)
- 3. (compound)
- 4. (complex)
- **5.** (simple)
- **6.** (simple)
- 7. (compound)
- **8.** (complex)

#### Exercise (6)

A:

- 1. was eating
- 2. was sleeping
- 3. was studying
- 4. went
- 5. was looking

#### B:

- 1. floats
- 2. is
- 3. has
- 4. dissolves
- 5. inhale
- 6. freezes
- 7. lay
- 8. has
- 9. have
- 10. is

C: I had already eaten the meal before Asma got the house

**D:** I will have written a letter by 7:30.

#### Exercise (7)

- 1. has seen
- 2. swam
- 3. has read
- 4. I have not begun
- 5. has traveled

## Exercise (8)

- 1. had read, met
- 2. had washed
- 3. joined

#### Exercise (9)

- 1. leaves
- 2. go
- 3. gets
- 4. rises
- 5. am working
- **6.** is buying

## Exercise (10)

- A:
- 1. leave
- 2. repair
- 3. to type
- 4. write
- 5. sign
- 6. to play
- 7. to swim
- **B:** a. I've taken my shirt to be shortened.
- C:
- 1. raised 2. sat 3. set
- 4. lay 5. lie

## Exercise (11)

- 1. to hear
- 2. to see
- 3. smoking
- 4. boring
- 5. leave
- 6. to fetch
- 7. repair
- 8. to walk
- 9. looking
- 10. playing
- 11. talking
- 12. to visit
- 13. to come
- 14. our
- 15. Fadi's

#### Exercise (12)

Verbs	Gerund	Past form
stop	stopping	stopped
die	dying	died
argue	arguing	argued
agree	agreeing	agreed
enjoy	enjoying	enjoyed
fix	fixing	fixed

#### Exercise (13)

- 1. have not visited
- 2. are presenting
- 3. had called
- 4. have been driving
- 5. A: have you been teaching
- 6. was figuring out
- 7. drinks
- 8. were studying
- 9. watch
- 10. were having
- 11. is
- 12. am running
- 13. walk
- 14. swimming
- 15. are....wearing
- 16. Have....seen
- 17. have been observing

#### Exercise (14)

1	a. to keep
2	a. Eating
3	a. been

4	b. thinking
5	a. He's
6	a. looks
7	a. is
8	b. are
9	b. are
10	a. is
11	a. is
12	c. am

## Exercise (15)

Next year, our college tennis team will use new fields and courts for training. They weren't that professional last year; but now they've become more and more well trained and organized.

#### Exercise (16)

1. Mrs. Bartlett has read a poem of Blake.

Exercise (17	<b>(</b> )		
1.	Jim had <u>a great time</u> .		<u>object</u>
2.	Everybody was brilliant.		<u>subject</u>
3.	I <u>liked</u> your suggestion.		<u>verb</u>
4.	I'm <u>happy</u> today.	complement	(adjective)
5.	She visits her grandmothe	r <u>weekly</u> .	adverb
6.	I love Silvia.	•	object

#### Exercise (18)

Make sentences by putting the following words in the correct order. You can refer to the simple sentence forms.

- 1. Ali is going to meet some people.
- 2. I have 15 buildings.
- 3. Aaron was sick yesterday.
- 4. He is looking at Gabriel.
- 5. They gave him a Swiss watch.

#### Exercise (19)

#### **A**:

1	c. was born
2	c. drinks
3	b. will study
4	c. take
5	b. went
6	c. am
7	a. has
8	a. do

#### Exercise (20)

- 1. I'm not going to see my friend.
- 2. My father will not/won't come back soon.
- 3. I don't/ do not want to sell my apartment.
- 4. These shirts don't/ do not cost too much.
- 5. My T-shirt didn't/ did not cost a lot of money.
- 6. She didn't/ did not shake hands with me.
- 7. Don't/ Do not put this letter in the envelope.
- 8. He couldn't/ could not leave early.
- 9. She doesn't have two daughters.
- 10. You didn't have to come by ship.

11. Rice isn't/ is not grown in Egypt.

#### Exercise (21)

- 1. bought
- 2. will leave
- 3. is
- 4. are
- 5. has already bought
- 6. had
- 7. left
- 8. eat

#### Exercise (22)

1. Ali lives in Amman.

#### Exercise (23):

- 1. Jack doesn't/ does not live in Barcelona.
- 2. Hitler didn't/ did not live in Germany.
- 3. Steve and Ross don't/ do not prefer pop music.
- 4. Mrs. Obama doesn't/ does not have two daughters.
- 6. We aren't/ are not close friends.

#### Exercise (24)

- (1) The project we have is very **successful**.
- (2) The boss told me that it was so important to **succeed** in the test.
  - (3) What a great success!

#### Exercise (25)

(1) Henry decided to visit Petra after reading an **advertisement** about it.

(2) It isn't cheap to advertise on TV.

#### Exercise (26)

- 1. quiet
- 2. care
- 3. easily
- 4. certainty
- 5. immediate
- 6. fast
- 7. wonderful
- 8. perfectly

#### Exercise (27)

#### A:

- 1. <u>are</u> (incorrect). It must be <u>is</u>.
- 2. <u>are</u> (incorrect). It must be <u>is</u>.
- 3. too many (incorrect). It must be too much...
- 4. <u>I</u> (incorrect). It must be <u>me</u>..
- 5. <u>to take</u> (incorrect). It must be <u>taking</u>.

### B: Change the following sentences so that they are parallel.

- 1. Melissa is a scholar, an athlete, and *artist*.
- 2. Children love playing in the mud, running in streets, and *getting* very dirty.

#### Exercise (28)

- 1. is
- 2. brings
- 3. aren't
- 4. are
- 5. are
- 6. is
- **7.** are

#### Exercise (29)

#### A:

- 1. I will visit Abdelrahman tomorrow.
- 2. They called **us** on the phone.
- 3. Johnson told **her** a story.
- 4. Alfred will make his presentation after **he** finishes his exercise.
- 5. Mugabi is eating **his** dinner.
- 6. **My** sitting room is freezing.
- 7. I go to the school with **him** every day.
- 8. She speaks to **us** every day.
- 9. I hurt **my** le.g.
- 10. John **himself** went to the meeting.
- 11. Hussein and I would go to Essex.
- 12. **Her** car didn't go as fast as **ours**.

#### B:

Countable nouns	Mass nouns
television	news
car	furniture
person	water
tooth	money
minute	information
cup	economics

#### Exercise (30)

1	c. few	2	a. a lot of
3	B. boys'	4	a. mens'
5	b. children	6	a. stories
7	b. loaves	8	a. too much

9	a. enough	10	a. is
11	b. some	12	a. traffic
13	b. myself		

#### Exercise (31)

- ()			
1	a. an	2	a. the
3	a. a	4	d. x
5	c. the	6	c. the
7	b. the	8	c. This
9	c. These	10	a. somebody
11	b. him	12	a. we
13	c. x/the	14	c. the/the
15	d. x		

#### Exercise (32)

- 1. Ali crossed **the** Mississippi.
- 2. Mount Rum is one of **the** highest mountains in Jordan.
- 3. **The** Alps lies in (**nothing**) Europe.
- 4. The shepard gave me **an** animal.
- 5. You need **a** pen and **an** exercise book to practice well.
- 6. **A** million people received my text message at Christmas Eve.
- 7. A few people were fortunate to escape the fire.
- 8. French is **an** easy language to learn.
- 9. My father is **an** honorable man.
- 10. (**nothing**) Gold is very precious metal.

#### Exercise (33)

- 1. The old man was sick.
- 2. I finished my task three years ago.
- 3. My parents moved into a new apartment.
- 4. Alia speaks English well.
- 5. Did I tell you about the new job?

- 6. I met a few people in the school.
- 7. Prevention is better than cure.

#### Exercise (34)

- 1. Mary hurt herself.
- 2. We helped the old woman **ourselves**.
- 3. Did you see Alison **yourself**?
- 4. Alia's coat is red; **mine** is brown.
- 5. Lucy is preparing **her** clothes.
- 6. Is that **your** motor cycle?

#### Exercise (35)

- 1. can dance
- 2. will
- 3. should have
- 4. play
- 5. I'm able to

#### Exercise (36)

- 1. Beethoven may be English.
  - It is possible that Beethoven is English.
- Or Beethoven is possibly English.
- 2. Mills will probably leave this summer.
  - It is probable that Mills will leave this summer
- 3. It is likely that Rashid flies tomorrow morning.
  - Rashid may fly tomorrow morning.

#### Exercise (37) A:

1	a. Ability
2	a. Ought to
3	a. Be able to
4	b. Request
5	c. Prohibition

6	b. Lack of necessity
7	a. Internal obligation
	a. it is probable she is
	thnking about her test

B: must have failed.

## Exercise (38)

	()
1	<b>b. holds back</b> 30 cubic meters of water.
2	give it up
3	I think I'll <b>take</b> my coat <b>off</b> . It is too hot here.
4	a. <b>put up</b> the picture you bought to me
5	c. <b>mix</b> me <b>up</b>
6	d. <b>look after</b> your child
7	e. <b>get over</b> them

# Exercise (39)

1	b. delicious
2	a. fitter
3	b. best
4	b. most gorgeous
5	b. more
6	b. interesting
7	a. healthy
8	b. slowly
9	a. fast
10	b. brown-eyed

# Exercise (40)

- most interesting
   easier

- 3. the longest
- 4. worse than
- 5. more painful
- 6. larger
- 7. more comfortable
- 8. highest
- 9. not as good as
- 10. as strong as

# Exercise (41)

1	a. a seven-star hotel
2	b. a five-bedroom house
3	b. a ten-letter word
4	a. a dark-haired mother
5	a. a 110-year-old man

# Exercise (42)

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
fine	finer	the finest
short	shorter	the shortest
few	fewer	the fewest
exciting	more exciting	the most exciting
nice	nicer	the nicest
fat	fatter	the fattest
difficult	more difficult	the most difficult
dim	dimmer	the dimmest
ugly	uglier	the ugliest
early	earlier	the earliest
dry	drier	the driest
young	younger	the youngest
narrow	narrower	the narrowest
much/ many	more	the most
little	less	the least
far	further/ farther	the furthest/ the
		farthest

#### Exercise (43)

- 1. I feel **a bit better** today.
- 2. The shop is **much more expensive** than the mall.
- 3. The missile went **higher and higher** into the sky.

#### Exercise (44)

- 1. Dove is **more talented** than Maccaine.
- 2. This month is **as hot as** last month.
- 3. A new apartment is **much more expensive** than an old one.
  - 4. A new apartment is **much better** than an old one.
  - 5. My dog runs **faster** than yours.

#### Exercise (45)

- 1. Salma is **the happiest** person we know.
- 2. Ben's car is **faster** than Dan's.
- 3. This picture is **more colourful** than the old one.
- 4. Hamad is **the least** athletic of all men.
- 5. Ahmad has **few** opportunities to join the team.

#### Exercise (46)

- 1. would travel
- 2. will break
- 3. would have finished
- 4. keep
- 5. expands
- 6. would tell
- 7. will be
- 8. had listened
- 9. will not get
- 10. didn't marry
- 11. will give
- 12. would have lived
- 13. would buy
- 14. can eat

- 15. are
- 16. studied
- 17. had seen
- 18. would have gone
- 19. would ride
- 20. had

#### Exercise (47)

- 1. Unless I was sick, I would attend the session.
- 2. Unless you call her, she will not be grateful.
- 3. I wish Shadi was telling me the truth.
- 4. I wish I could pay attention.
- 5. I wish I had woken up early this morning.

#### Exercise (48)

1	a. Provided	2	c. although
3	a. Because	4	a. While
5	a. are	6	a. are
7	a. nor	8	b. although
9	a. for	10	a. so am I
11	a. as soon as	12	a. so
13	b. However	14	a. nevertheless
15	c. carefully	16	a. clever

#### Exercise (49)

- 1. In spite of sleeping early, I couldn't wake up on time.
- 2. Because of the war in Iraq, Ahmad postponed his flight.

## Exercise (50)

1	because	2	because
3	because of	4	because of
5	because of		

### Exercise (51)

- 1. The sun is shining **so** brightly that I have to put on my sunglasses.
- 2. Deema is **such** a powerful runner that she always wins the races.

#### Exercise (52)

#### **A**:

- 1. Mr. Eyad speaks **not only** Spanish **but also** English.
- 2. I have villas **both** in the country **and** in the city.

#### B:

- 1. We had **such** a bad night that we couldn't sleep.
- 2. She gave me **so** good a stereo that I was very grateful to her.
- 3. The day was **so** hot that everyone went to the sea.
- 4. The motel has **such** a comfortable room that I don't want to leave.
- 5. It was **so** dark that I couldn't see my finger.
- 6. That restaurant has **such** delicious food that I can't stop eating.

#### Exercise (53)

- 1. The boys shouldn't take the medicine, and **neither** should the girls.
- 2. We don't plan to join the team, and **neither** do they.
- 3. They won't have to work on weekends, and she won't **either**.
- 4. I can't stand listening to pop music, and she can't **either**.

#### Exercise (54)

1. The boys aren't happy with the programme, and neither **do** the girls.

- 2. We can't study in the library, and they **can't** either.
- 3. He didn't know the answer and neither **did**I

#### Exercise (55)

- 1. does
- 2. Who
- 3. Where
- 4. How much

#### Exercise (56)

- 1. Who wants some food to eat?
- 2. What did McCain give me?
- 3. What fell on the floor?
- 4. When did she see me?
- 5. Where do you live in?
- 6. How old is Hashim?
- 7. Whom did you meet in Manchester?
- 8. Where was Mohammad born?
- 9. What do you have in your luggage?
- 10. Why can't Ahmad leave?
- 11. Whose purse is this?
- 12. Which chapter can't you figure out?

#### Exercise (57):

1. Mohammad came yesterday, didn't he?

Yes, he did.

2. I don't live in a palace, do I?

No, you don't.

3. Ahmad would like to have some coffee, wouldn't he?

Yes, he would.

4. This is Anne's purse, isn't it?

Yes, it is.

- 5. You have scanned the letter, haven't you? Yes, I have.
- 6. They couldn't do the exercise, could they? No, they couldn't

#### Exercise (58)

1	a. don't you	2	b. won't you
3	a. Where	4	a. So am I
5	a. Neither am I		

### Exercise (59)

1	b. Are	2	b. Were
3	a. Has	4	a. call
5	a. Didn't	6	c. isn't he
7	a. Yes, she did	8	a. What

#### Exercise (60)

- 1. You're going to Paris next year, aren't you?
- 2. Harry signed the petition, didn't he?
- 3. There is a final test, isn't it?
- 4. She's been studying French for 3 years, hasn't she?
- 5. He should see the dentist, shouldn't he?
- 6. You can play tennis today, can't you?

#### Exercise (61)

- 1. The book will have been read by noon time tomorrow by my students.
- 2. The wagon was being pulled by two horses.
- 3. Three windows have been smashed by Asma.
- 4. 2000 boxes of clothes are sent a month by Aramex.
- 5. Macbeth was written by Shakespeare.
- 6. This book had better be returned before Sunday by her.

- 7. This package should have been sent by them.
- 8. The project has been performed successfully by the engineer.
- 9. The trees are being cut by the old man.
- 10. Coffee isn't grown in Jordan by farmers.
- 11. The new house was provided with furniture by them.
- 12. This document ought to be signed by you.
- 13. Wells are dug by them to get fresh water.
- 14. I was let in by her.
- 15. All the salary was spent by her on clothes.
- 16. Ali is called 'the smuggler'.

#### Exercise (62)

#### A:

b. I must have this study translated into Arabic.

#### B:

a. I've taken my shirt to be shortened.

#### C:

- 1. must be delivered
- 2. was written
- 3. is cooked

#### D:

- 1. are seen
- 2. have been thrown away

#### Exercise (63)

- 1. The lecturer said that they had a meeting the following week.
- 2. My mum ordered me to lock the door.
- 3. She asked me if I had married.
- 4. I asked Ali how many copies he sold.
- 5. Rabab told Majeda (that) her story was very good.
- 6. Alia told Ziad (that) she liked his camera.

- 7. Ibrahim said (that) his parents were taking them to India.
- 8. My friend asked me where his jacket was.
- 9. My parents told me that they were working there to pay for their new car.
- 10. He said that yesterday he had been in bed with temperature.
- 11. Ahmad advised Sami not to leave school.
- 12. My brother asked me to recommend him a good book on physics.

#### Exercise (64)

1. Adjective clause: which I held

2. Adjective clause: whose bike is stolen

3. Adjective clause: who told me the truth

4. Adjective clause: where I live

#### Exercise (65)

- 1. when. 2. where 3. whose
- 4. whom 5. which 6. who

#### Exercise (66)

- 1. Do you know the man who lives in the blue building?
- 2. The coach whom I called gave me enough support.
- 3. The building where we lived was hit by missile.

#### Exercise (67)

- 1. Gallagher's room is on the third floor.
- 2. I saw Julia Robert holding a parrot in her hand.
- 3. I'll meet you at the airport.
- 4. There are 23 seats in the classroom.

#### Exercise (68)

- 1. I'm **afraid of** parachuting. I hate to jump from high places.
- 2. Orange is **rich in** vitamin (c).
- 3. People in Congo **suffer from** civil war.
- 4. Don't write in pen.
- 5. When you decide to participate in the parliamentary elections, please tell me in advance.
- 6. My firm-report will be declared **on the** radio.
- 7. Water **consists of** oxygen and hydrogen.
- 8. You are well-trained. That is why I can **rely on** you.
- 9. I'll be out for few hours. Could you **take care of** my baby?
- 10. I've run my website **since** 2001.(since/ for)
- 11. He's been there **for** over half an hour. (since/ for)
- 12. He was sitting at the table. (in/at)
- 13. We went to the station **by taxi.** (on/by)
- 14. I was **born in** Holland. (in/on)
- 15. I'm **proud of** my king. (of/ at)
- 16. The child is **afraid of** the dark room. (of/by)
- 17. You're **accused of** smuggling. (of/by)
- 18. He speaks French with confidence. (with/ from)
- 19. He spent a lot of money **on** cassettes. (on/ at)
- 20. Are you good at physics? (at/on)

#### Exercise (69)

- 1. Love **does change** the course of your life.
- 2. She **does** always **disagree** with me.
- 3. I do admire Arthur's courage./ It is Arthur's courage what I admire./ What I admire is Arthur's courage.
- 4. **Never have I** been humiliated in my life.

#### Exercise (70)

- 1. I have **been** living in London since 2001.
- 2. Don't **repeat** the song.
- 3. He **has** been to Paris twice.
- 4. **I've** three children.
- 5. I have two sons.
- 6. Sami **bought** this house 20 years ago.
- 7. John didn't attend the **class because** he was sick.
- 8. **Ali** bought a good van.
- **9.** What is your name?
- 10. **The** Earth rotates round the sun.
- 11. Didn't you **see** that sign?
- 12. If I were a bird, I would fly to Canada.
- 13. I quit **smoking**.
- 14. Suzan and Julia are coming to dinner.

#### Exercise (71)

- Stop **looking** for a new computer.
- Your best personal computer is now available.
- Our aim is to provide you with the <u>latest</u> technology.
- Your computer was made in **England**.
- Now it **has** the best options.
- **Don't** think twice. You won't regret it.
- Do you still have any doubts?

#### Exercise (72)

$\mathbf{A}$			
1. have= has	2. study= studied	3. wake up= wakes up	
4. Ive= I've	5. son= sons	6. beauty= beautiful	
7. is= has	8. buyed= bought	9Because he was	
		sick= because he was	
		sick (omit the full stop)	
10. ali= Ali	11. (.)=?	12. an= the	
13. A=The	14. to write= write	15. has= have	
<b>16.</b> Too much =	Too many		

В			
1. don't= doesn't	2. aren't they= isn't it	3. didn't he=	
		didn't they	
4. does she.= does she?	5. aren't we= aren't I	6. left= leave	
7. saw= see	8. when= what	9. why= who	
10. why= where	11. How much= How old	12. where=	
		which	
13. is= am	14. carelessly= careless	15. good= well	
16. easily= easy	17. perfectly= perfect	18. flies= fly	
19. he= He	20. rain= raining	21. because	
		of= because	

#### Exercise (73)

- 1. A beautiful **angel** visited me.
- 2. I have **your** notes in my notebook.
- 3. It is a **custom** in Jordan to eat lamb on wedding parties.
- 4. **Whether** we run or walk depends on the roads conditions.
- 5. Although my brother doesn't like **dessert**, I prefer something sweet.
- 6. James and Fredrick teach kindergarten; the **latter** works in Nepal.
- 7. King Abdullah II is of the Hashemite **descent.**
- 8. You need to **cite** your references when you write an essay.
- 9. My shirt came **loose** and it needed to be tightened.
- 10. Asma had to **quit** eating sweets to be healthier.
- 11. Your remarks greatly **affected** Kaite.
- 12. After declaring bankruptcy, General Motors was forced to **liquidate** its assets.

# **Progress Tests' Answer Keys** Test (1)

	1. b	2. a	3. b
	4. b	5. a	6. a
	7. a	8. a	9. a
	10. b	11. a	12. a
	13. a	14. a	15. a
Q1	16. a	17. a	18. a
	19. a	20. b	21. a
	22. a	23. b	24. a
	25. a	26. b	27. a
	28. c	29. a	30. b
	31. c	32.	
Q2	a		
Q3	1. interested	2. people	3. was
Q4	c.		

# **Test (2)**

	1. leave	2. prepare	3. painted
<b>Q1</b>	4. wash	5. to clean	6. damaged
	7. rains		
02	stopping/ stopped	opening/ opened	controlling/ controlled
Q2	trying/ tried	lying/lay	
Q3	argued	destroyed	preferred
Q3	studied	played	
	1. is taking	2. washes	3. rises
	4. am trying	5. are visiting	6. costs
<b>Q4</b>	7. am checking	8. doesn't belong	9. is helping
	10. don't	11. needs	12. want
	lovehate		
	1. raised	2. boils	3. sat
Q5	<b>4.</b> set	5. lay	6. lie
	7. slept	8. deal	9. flew
<b>Q6</b>	1. b	2. a	3. a
	4. b	5. a	6. a

	7. a	8. b	9. a
<b>Q7</b>	1. magician	2. magic	
	1. Dr. Ali is the Eng	lish teacher at Amman pri	vate school.
	2. B: No, I'm not.		
	3. The women's mo	sque is to your left.	
<b>Q8</b>	4. Are you happy to join the team?		
	5. Because I'm optimistic, I won the championship		
	6. I bought Tim's car.		
	7. I bought a pen, a book and a table.		
00	1. The sun was	2. You were wearing	3. She bought a pretty
<b>Q9</b>	shining yesterday.	jeans last night.	cotton scarf.
Q10	1. incorrect	2. incorrect	
Q11	1. a	2. a	3. c
Q12	c		

# **Test (3)**

01	1. had	2. was drivinghit	3. decidedwere starving
Q1	4. fellwas running	5. was Asmahan wearing	
	1. hasn't attended	2. went	3. hasreturned
Q2	4. hasseen	5. has finished	6. has had
Q2	7. has never won	8. have you stayed	9. Has Sam fed
	10. has been	11. have released	
Q3	1. made	2. had fallen	3. becamehad become
Q4	1. visit= visited	2. is living= has been	3. have= has
Q4		living	
	<b>4.</b> am= was		
Q5	1. in	2. at	3. at
	4. on	5. at	6. in
	1. a	2. a	3. a
06	4. b	5. a	4. b
Qu	7. b	8. a	9. a
	10. a		
<b>Q7</b>	1. her relatives were coming to visit Petra that week.		
	2. he thought Jerash was the most beautiful city in Jordan.		

	3. his parents had changed their house.			
	1. a	2. b	3. a	
	4. a	5. a	6. a	
<b>Q8</b>	7. a	8. a	9. b	
	10. a	11. a	12. b	
	13. a	14. c		
<b>Q9</b>	a			

# **Test (4)**

	1			
	1. to play= play	2. wills= will	3. had= have	
	4. to behave=	5. Do you can run=	6. don't can= can't	
	behave	Can you run		
	7. going= go	8. don't have= don't	9. playing= play	
Q1		have to		
	10. ought=	11. shoulds= should	12. got= get	
	ought to			
	13. was able=			
	was able to			
	1. The red windo	w is opened by Sam every o	ther morning.	
		rels are being painted by Sa		
	3. The gate has be	een smashed by the policem	en.	
00	4. The red wine b	ottle was shaken by the tax	i driver.	
Q2		being washed by Lee.		
		had been served by Tom a	nd Jeff.	
	7. Anew plan will be set up be Jeffery			
		is going to be established b	y the government.	
		trousers were made by the l		
	2. Our house was built by my father in 1999.			
Q3	3. My rug will be completed by my mother tomorrow.			
	4. A large vase has been dropped by me.			
	5. Your son should be taught how to behave.			
	1. looking 2. playing 3. talking			
04	4. to visit/	5. to take	6. to build	
Q4	visiting			
	7. closing			
	1. a	2. b	3. a	
Q5	4. c	5. c	6. a	
	7. a	8. a		
06	1. a	2. a	3. a	
<b>Q6</b>	4. b	5. b		
<b>Q7</b>	1. rang	2. was living	3. dodo	
	4. A: doesdo	5. smoke	6. hasn't drunk	
	B: is			
	7. haseaten	8. Havebeen	9. sprained	
	•		-	

	10. had lost	11. came	
Q8	1. d	2. c	

**Test (5)** 

Q1	1. a	2. b	3. a
	1. a	2. b	3. c
Q2	4. c	5. b	6. b
Q2	7. a	8. c	9. a
	10. a	11. a	
	1. b	2. a	3. c
	4. c	5. a	6. b
Q3	7. a	8. b	9. b
Q3	10. a	11. b	12. b
	13. a	14. c	15. a
	16. b		
Q4	1. a	2. a	3. c
	4. a	5. a	6. a
	7. a		

**Test (6)** 

Q1	1. excitingpleased	2. embarrassed	3. disappointing		
Ų	4. tired	5. annoying			
	1. sounded	2. visits	3. is flying		
Q2	4. is trying	5. wakesup	6. had snowed		
Q <sup>2</sup>	7. was watching	8. was fixing	9. went		
	10. lost				
Q3	1. has dropped	2. has failed			
	1. b	2. b	3. b		
	4. b	5. b	6. b		
<b>Q4</b>	7. c	8. b	9. a		
	10. a	11. b	12. c		
	13. a				
	1. a	2. b	3. a		
Q5	4. a	5. b	6. c		
Q5	7. a	8. a	9. b		
	10. a				

**Test (7)** 

Q1	Situation (1): b	Situation (2): b			
Q2	Pair 1: a	Pair 2: b	Pair 3: b		
	Pair 4: a	Pair 5: b			
Q3	1. a	2. a	3. a		
	4. c	5. b	6. b		
	7. a	8. a	9. a		
	10. a	11. b	12. a		
	13. a	14. b	15. a		
Q4	1. a	2. b	3. b		
	4. a	5. a	6. a		
	7. b	8. b	9. a		
	10. b	11. b	12. a		
	13. a	14. b			
	1. a	2. a	3. b		
Q5	4. a	5. a	6. a		
	7. a	8. b			

**Test (8)** 

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q5	Q6	Q7	Q8	Q9	Q10	Q11	Q12	Q13
C	В	В	C	D	D	D	В	A	C	В	D	В
Q14	Q15	Q16	Q17	Q18	Q19	Q20	Q21	Q22	Q23	Q24	Q25	Q26
A	A	A	A	A	В	$\mathbf{A}$	A	A	В	A	A	$\mathbf{A}$
<b>A</b> Q27	<b>A</b> Q28			<b>A</b> Q31			A	A	В	A	A	A

#### **References:**

- 1. Objective IELTS, Michael Black and Annetta Capel, Cambridge University Press, England 2008.
- 2. The Oxford Dictionary of Current English, R E Allen, England, 1984; TOEFL Test Preparation Kit Workbook, ETS, USA, 1998.
- 3. Oxford practice grammar, John Eastwood, Oxford University, 1994.
- 4. Translation with Reference to English and Arabic: A Practical Guide, Fargal M. & Shunnaq A., Dar Alhilal for Translation, 1998.
- 5. A Course in Phonetics, Peter Ladefoged, Harcourt Brace, Florida, 1993.
- 6. Understanding and Using English Grammar, Betty Azar, Washington, 1989.
- 7. Action Pack 10, Simon Haines, Pearson Educational Ltd- York press, England, 2008.
- 8. Webster's concise edition of spelling, grammar and using, English thesaurus, Scotland 2002.
- 9. Focus on Language, Aida Alemami, Amman, 1998.

# But that to come shall all be done by the rule.

Shakespeare, Antony and Cleopatra